

Notice is given that an ordinary meeting of the Full Council will be held on:

**Date:** Thursday 28 September 2017  
**Time:** 1.30pm  
**Meeting Room:** Tasman Council Chamber  
**Venue:** 189 Queen Street  
Richmond

---

## Full Council

### AGENDA

---

#### MEMBERSHIP

<b>Mayor</b>	Mayor Kempthorne	
<b>Deputy Mayor</b>	Cr King	
<b>Councillors</b>	Cr Brown	Cr McNamara
	Cr Bryant	Cr Ogilvie
	Cr Canton	Cr Sangster
	Cr Greening	Cr Tuffnell
	Cr P Hawkes	Cr Turley
	Cr Maling	Cr Wensley

(Quorum 7 members)

Contact Telephone: 03 543 8405  
Email: [kate.redgrove@tasman.govt.nz](mailto:kate.redgrove@tasman.govt.nz)  
Website: [www.tasman.govt.nz](http://www.tasman.govt.nz)



## **AGENDA**

**1 OPENING, WELCOME**

**2 APOLOGIES AND LEAVE OF ABSENCE**

**Recommendation**

**That apologies be accepted.**

**3 PUBLIC FORUM**

**4 DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST**

**5 LATE ITEMS**

**6 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**

**That the minutes of the Full Council meeting held on Thursday, 7 September 2017, be confirmed as a true and correct record of the meeting.**

**7 PRESENTATIONS**

Nil

**8 REPORTS**

8.1	Adoption of Annual Report 2016/2017 .....	5
8.2	Activity Balances Report .....	15
8.3	Capital Carryovers 2016/17 to 2017/18.....	45
8.4	Regional Pest Management Proposed Plan.....	53
8.5	Referral of Saxton Field Committee minutes and recommendations .....	197
8.6	Uplift of Deferred Zone - Hari and Topi Way, Mapua.....	241
8.7	Uplift of Deferment at 551 Lower Queen Street.....	243



## 8 REPORTS

### 8.1 ADOPTION OF ANNUAL REPORT 2016/2017

Decision Required

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Alan Bywater, Senior Policy Advisor; Russell Holden, Finance Manager; Bryce Grammer, Financial Accountant
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-16

#### 1 Summary

- 1.1 The Annual Report and Summary Annual Report (under separate cover) for the year ended 30 June 2017 are presented with this report for adoption.
- 1.2 The Council is required to complete an Annual Report each year, have it audited, and adopted prior to 31 October.
- 1.3 The Annual Report 2016/2017 presents a positive picture for Council's financial and non-financial performance. The report sets out many of Council's achievements in delivering services and facilities to residents and ratepayers. It also explains what Council has been doing to address the key issues facing the District, as identified in the Long Term Plan 2015-2025.
- 1.4 Council made operational savings throughout the year, resulting in an accounting surplus of \$32.9 million, this is compared to the budgeted position of \$6.8 million; so a favourable variance of \$26.1 million. Once the non-cash items, such as non-funded depreciation, vested assets, and gains in derivatives etc. are removed the underlying operating surplus is \$12.9 million. Council also spent \$32.7 million on capital projects and service improvements throughout the year, which was below budget.
- 1.5 Council's total net external debt as at 30 June 2017 was \$122 million, which was considerably below the \$166 million forecast in the Annual Plan 2016/2017.
- 1.6 The overall positive financial result is attributed to a number of factors, including:
  - lower borrowing costs than expected;
  - low inflation;
  - higher than anticipated growth;
  - increased dividends from Port Nelson and Nelson Airport;
  - increased revenue from forestry activities, through a change in market demand;
  - higher grant receipts; and
  - lower capital works expenditure.
- 1.7 Rates revenue for the year was \$70 million, and total income from all other sources was \$63 million. Growth in the District forms part of this increase.

- 1.8 Council's non-financial performance was lower than last year, with 70% of performance targets being met, or were within 5% of the target (compared with 78% in 2015/2016). 24% were not achieved, and there were 6% that could not be reported on this year. These results demonstrate that for the most part Council is meeting the expectations set out in the Long Term Plan.
- 1.9 Audit New Zealand is still undertaking its final review of the Annual Report and the Summary Annual Report. Any changes arising from that audit will be tabled at the meeting on 28 September and incorporated in the final versions.

<b>2 Draft Resolution</b>
---------------------------

**That the Full Council**

1. receives the Adoption of Annual Report 2016/2017 report RCN17-09-16; and
2. adopts both the Annual Report 2016/2017 and the Summary Annual Report 2016/2017, as tabled at the meeting, pursuant to section 98 of the Local Government Act 2002; and
3. notes that the auditor will table the audit opinion after Council has adopted the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report; and
4. agrees to the Mayor, Cr King and the Chief Executive Officer, signing off any further minor editorial amendments and the professionally designed versions of the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report prior to them being printed for public distribution and made available on the Council's website.

### 3 Purpose of the Report

- 3.1 To adopt Tasman District Council's Annual Report and Summary Annual Report for the year ended 30 June 2017.

### 4 Background and Discussion

- 4.1 Section 98 of the Local Government Act 2002 requires Council to prepare and adopt an Annual Report by 31 October each year.
- 4.2 The Annual Report measures what Council planned to complete as per the relevant Annual Plan, or Long Term Plan, and what was achieved. It is an important part of Council's accountability to the community for the decisions made and services delivered throughout the year.
- 4.3 The information contained in these documents was prepared with input from a number of staff throughout Council.
- 4.4 The Draft Annual Report and Summary Annual Report were presented to the Audit and Risk Committee on 21 September 2017.
- 4.5 Audit New Zealand (AuditNZ) audits the Annual Report on behalf of the Office of the Auditor General. At the time of writing this report, staff were still finalising a number of items with AuditNZ, however the auditor's opinion will be completed and available at the meeting.
- 4.6 Council has a credit rating of AA- with a positive outlook from Standard and Poors Global. This rating reflects Council's strong financial management, budgetary flexibility, liquidity, and low contingent liabilities. A rating of AA- enables Council to borrow funds at more favourable interest rates and from a wider range of funders, than it would otherwise be able to with a lower rating.

#### Finances

- 4.7 In summary, Council has continued its positive financial trend from the previous year and recorded another surplus. The surplus for the 2016/2017 year was significantly higher than budgeted, being \$12.9 million.<sup>[1]</sup> This compares very closely to the 2015/2016 year surplus of \$13.2 million, and is \$12 million ahead of budget.
- 4.8 The positive financial position reflects ongoing operational savings achieved by Council, delayed capital expenditure for some large projects and lower debt. The result was also assisted by a number of external factors which moved in our favour. These external factors included:
- lower borrowing costs than expected;
  - low inflation;
  - higher than anticipated growth;
  - increased dividends from Port Nelson and Nelson Airport;
  - increased revenue from forestry activities, through a change in market demand;
  - higher grant receipts; and
  - lower capital works expenditure.

<sup>[1]</sup> Once the non-cash items and capital funds were removed.

A full description of the financial variances from the Annual Plan 2016/2017 is contained in Note 36 to the Accounts in the Annual Report.

- 4.9 Council’s net external debt as at 30 June 2017 was \$122 million. The Annual Plan 2017/2018 forecasts this to be \$159 million by 30 June 2018 – although with net debt now lower than forecast at year end for 2016/2017, it is likely that we will not reach the expected \$159 million debt figure.

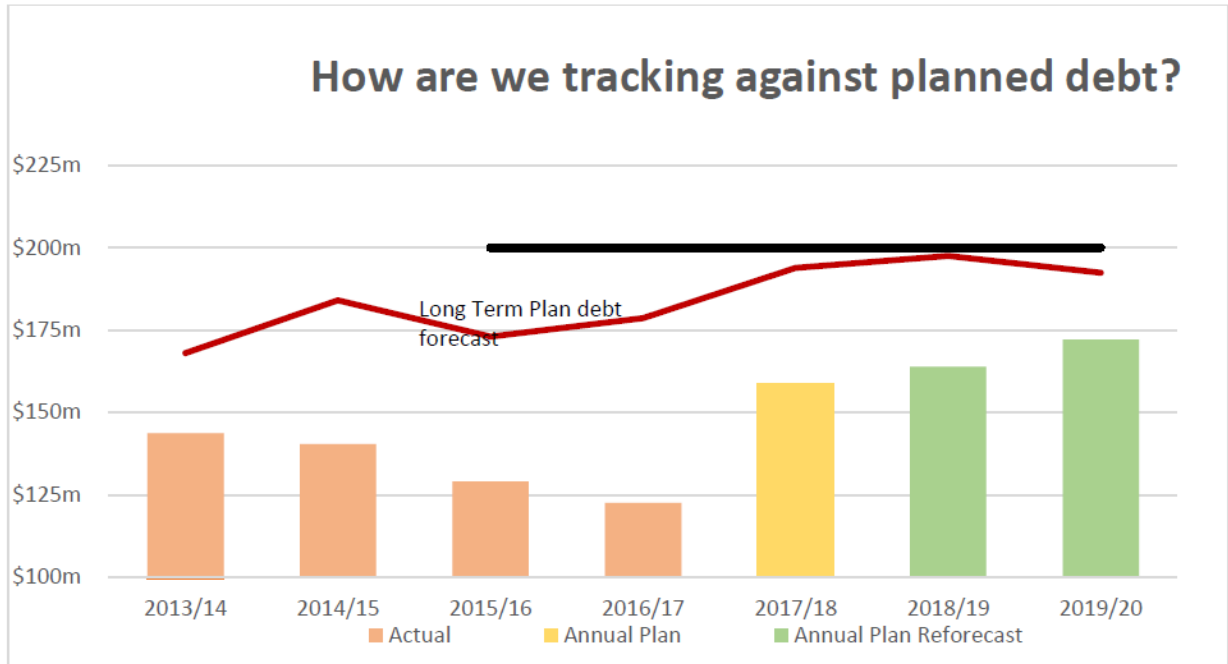


Figure 1: Long Term Plan and Annual Plan actual and forecast debt levels

- 4.10 To help manage rates affordability, we include a limit in our Financial Strategy on rates revenue. For the Long Term Plan 2012-2022 this limit was set at \$52 million for general rates and \$53 million for targeted rates per annum over the life of the Long Term Plan. This was reduced to \$51 million for general rates and \$46 million for targeted rates per annum in the Long Term Plan 2015-2025, reflecting the work done as part of the last Plan to address rates affordability issues. This Annual Report shows we are well below the limit, at \$35 million for general rates and \$33 million for targeted rates.
- 4.11 Figure 2 shows that our actual rates revenue has been higher than forecast than in our last three annual plans. This additional revenue can be attributed to higher population growth in than forecast, therefore resulting in a larger rating base.



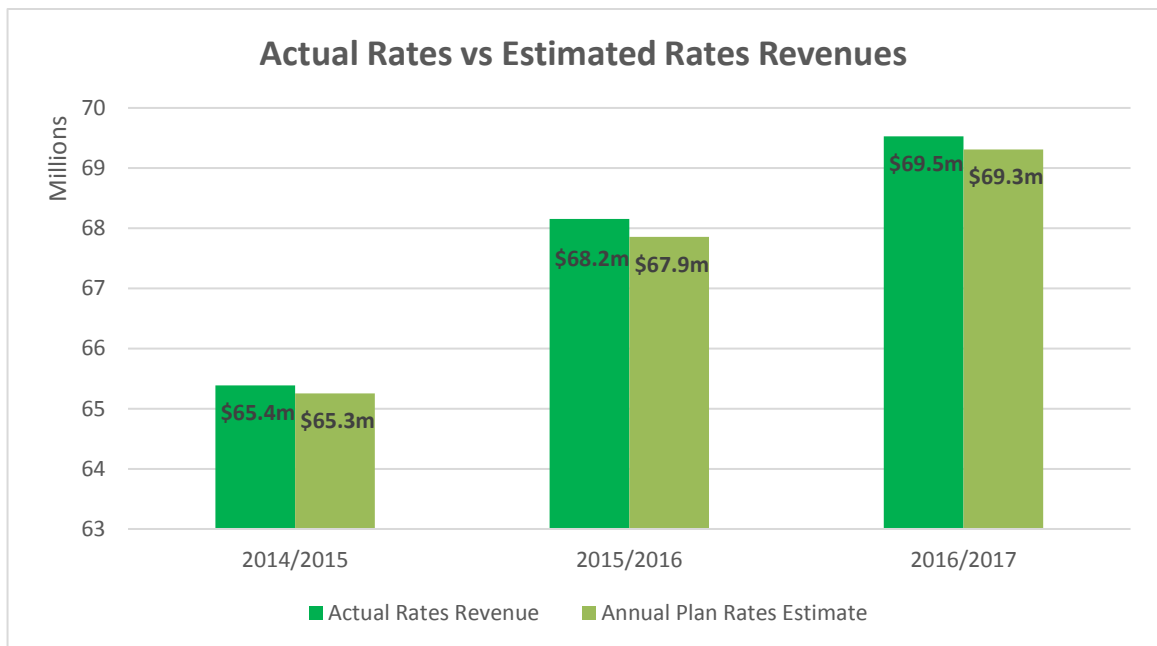


Figure 2: Actual rates revenue compared to estimated revenue

### Non-Financial Performance

- 4.12 Council measures its performance each year using a core set of indicators that are determined through the Long Term Plan. The results present a high level view of performance. A number of indicators are based on the Annual Residents' survey. Staff reported the results from this survey at the Council meeting on 7 September 2017.
- 4.13 Council's non-financial performance was lower than last year, with 70% of performance targets being met, or being within 5% of the target (compared with 78% in 2015/2016), 24% were not achieved, and there were 6% that could not be reported on this year. These results demonstrate that for the most part Council is meeting the expectations set out in the Long Term Plan for resident satisfaction with service delivery, monitoring and reporting, and performance.
- 4.14 The Annual Report notes that there were more targets that we did not achieve this year. Some of these we have purposely set at a high level to ensure we continue to improve our performance (i.e. they are 'stretch targets' for us to aim for in the future). There are other areas of performance that we will need to continue to focus on in order to meet our performance targets.
- 4.15 The areas where targets were not achieved are widely spread across the organisation with causal factors specific to each case rather than a common reason. The lack of staff in the Property Team, and some examples of deferred maintenance and growth related infrastructure capacity pressures have contributed to our lower achievement level. In other cases significant infrastructure upgrades (which are in our forward programme) are required before the targets can be achieved.
- 4.16 The performance of each Activity Group is set out in Part 4 of the Annual Report.

## Activity Highlights

4.17 The Annual Report contains a summary of many of the activities Council has undertaken throughout the year. Some of the highlights include:

### *Making Progress in Upgrading Queen Street*

4.18 Work is well underway to replace the ageing infrastructure under Queen Street and lower the road to better control floods from stormwater. We have appreciated the patience and understanding of business operators in the area during this noisy and disruptive work.

### *Response to the Effects of the Kaikoura-Hurunui earthquake*

4.19 In response to the massive increase in traffic through Murchison and St Arnaud we have installed more rubbish bins in both towns, added more toilets in St Arnaud and in conjunction with a local business provided a new truck stop in Murchison.

### *Waimea Community Dam*

4.20 We have made progress on a number of fronts including contractor engagement, obtaining the necessary land, and funding and governance arrangements. We expect to be undertaking community consultation on important parts of the package in late 2017.

### *Learning from Havelock North Water Contamination*

4.21 In light of the campylobacter contamination of the drinking water supply in Havelock North, we have evaluated the Stage 1 findings from the Havelock North enquiry and are using them to improve the quality assurance of our water systems.

### *Replacing Kaiteriteri Sewer Main*

4.22 Work has commenced to replace the major sewer line from across Tapu Bay with an over-land replacement and a kilometre of the new pipe had been laid by the end of June 2017.

### *Working for Swimmable Water*

4.23 Our rivers and lakes are generally highly swimmable compared with most other regions in New Zealand. Beaches and rivers monitored for bathing having been shown to meet swimmability standards 98% of the time at sampling sites in dry weather throughout the bathing season.

### *Public Input to Manage Takaka's Precious Freshwater Resources*

4.24 We sought public feedback on the Takaka Freshwater and Land Advisory (Takaka FLAG) group's eight key values and management objectives and responses are being assessed.

### *New Community Recreation Facility for Golden Bay.*

4.25 We have completed the construction of the Golden Bay Community Recreation Facility in Takaka with many parts of the facility receiving regular use from the local community. Opening of the function room is awaiting resolution of the grandstand, car parking and drainage issues.

### *Solid Waste Joint Venture Takes Off*

4.26 This year we reached agreement with Nelson City Council to form a joint committee to manage and operate the two landfills in the Region and on 1 July 2017 landfill operations transferred to the Nelson Tasman Regional Landfill Business Unit.

### *Accelerating the Provision of Houses in High Demand Areas*

- 4.27 In May 2017 the Mayor and the Minister of Building and Construction signed a new Housing Accord and by the end of June 2017 we had agreed to eight Special Housing Areas that should provide at least 1,281 sections in Richmond, Wakefield, Marahau and Pohara over the next few years.

*Council Elections Result in Eight New Councillors*

- 4.28 Council's triennial elections were held on 8 October 2016 and resulted in eight new councillors and five new community board members. .

**Ratepayers' views of our performance**

- 4.29 Since 1996 we have commissioned a survey of residents' views on a range of services we deliver. The survey is undertaken by the National Research Bureau to ensure independence and impartiality. A total of 400 residents over 18 years of age were surveyed during May 2017.
- 4.30 The results continue to show steady rates of satisfaction with the services and activities provided by Council.
- 75% of residents are satisfied with the way rates are spent on services and facilities.
  - 80% of residents feel we supply more than enough or enough information.
  - Overall, 69% of residents feel we have a good reputation, compared with 62% in 2016.
- 4.31 Council considered a report providing more details on the annual residents' survey results at its 7 September 2017 meeting.
- 4.32 Once adopted, we will make the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report available on Council's website and at service centres and libraries. We will highlight the publication of the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report through Newsline directing readers to them, and conveying some of the key outcomes.

<b>5 Options</b>
------------------

- 5.1 Option 1 – Preferred Option - Adopt the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report 2016/2017.
- The advantage of this option is that it enables the timely production and distribution of the 2016/2017 Annual Report. Once adopted the Annual Report becomes the public record of Council's performance for the year. Consequently, Council should ensure it is satisfied with the content prior to adopting the Annual Report.
- 5.2 Request changes to the Annual Report 2016/2017 and Summary Annual Report prior to their adoption no later than 31 October 2017.
- Council may wish to recommend that staff alter the Annual Report or Summary Annual Report 2016/2017 prior to it being adopted.
- 5.3 The advantage of this option is that, if Council has any significant concerns about the content of the Annual Report or summary, staff can address them prior to Council adoption of the documents. The disadvantage is that depending on the extent of changes requested, staff will need to consider their ability to make the alterations and liaise with Audit New Zealand on its ability to complete the audit in time for the Council to adopt the Annual Report at its meeting on 19 October 2017.

**6 Strategy and Risks**

- 6.1 The preparation of the Annual Report is a Council-wide project, involving staff from all teams across the organisation.
- 6.2 The form of the financial content is highly regulated by statute and accounting conventions. There is also a lot of information in the Annual Report, which outlines to the public the progress Council has made against its performance targets.

**7 Policy / Legal Requirements / Plan**

- 7.1 Section 98 of the Local Government Act 2002 (Act) requires all local authorities to prepare and adopt an annual report by 31 October each year.
- 7.2 The Act is also specific on the format of and what needs to be reported in each annual report.
- 7.3 The report must also comply with the New Zealand International Financial Reporting Standards.
- 7.4 The Act requires the annual report to be audited. For us, the audit is carried out by Audit New Zealand on behalf of the Office of the Auditor General.
- 7.5 An Audit Report will be handed to Council by the Auditor at the meeting following Council's adoption of the Annual Report.
- 7.6 Upon adoption of the Annual Report Council must, within one month, make publicly available both the Annual Report and Summary Annual Report. These documents will be available as hardcopies and via Council's website.

**8 Consideration of Financial or Budgetary Implications**

- 8.1 The Annual Report details the level of expenditure and income for each group of activities and compares the actual positions to budget. There are no financial or budget implications arising from the adoption of the Annual Report 2016/2017.

**9 Significance and Engagement**

- 9.1 The reporting of Council activities is a significant undertaking, however the adoption of the Annual Report, as a decision of Council, is of low significance under the Significance and Engagement Policy. Staff consider that engagement with the community is not required prior to the adoption of the Annual Report, given it is a summary of the Council's activities over the year and the public will not be in a position to comment on the Annual Report's content.

Issue	Level of Significance	Explanation of Assessment
Is there a high level of public interest, or is decision likely to be controversial?	Low	The decision before the Council is whether or not to adopt the Annual Report. Public interest in this decision is considered low.
Is there a significant impact arising from duration of the effects from the decision?	Low	The Annual Report documents Council's performance in 2016/2017, which ended on 30 June 2017. The decision to adopt it is permanent however the impact arising from it is minor.
Does the decision relate to a strategic asset? (refer Significance and Engagement Policy for list of strategic assets)	Low	The Annual Report documents the financial and non-financial performance of a number of strategic assets. However, it is not a mechanism by which the ownership nor operation of strategic assets can be altered.
Does the decision create a substantial change in the level of service provided by Council?	N/A	The Annual Report documents performance against levels of service but is not a mechanism to change levels of service.
Does the proposal, activity or decision substantially affect debt, rates or Council finances in any one year or more of the LTP?	Low	The decision for the Council is whether to adopt the Annual Report and has virtually no effect on Council finances.
Does the decision involve the sale of a substantial proportion or controlling interest in a CCO or CCTO?	N/A	

Does the proposal or decision involve entry into a private sector partnership or contract to carry out the deliver on any Council group of activities?	N/A	
Does the proposal or decision involve Council exiting from or entering into a group of activities?	N/A	

## 10 Conclusion

- 10.1 Council must prepare and adopt an annual report by 31 October each year.
- 10.2 The Annual Report and Summary Annual Report 2016/2017 have been completed and are presented for adoption in this report.
- 10.3 The Annual Report 2016/2017 demonstrates positive financial and non-financial outcomes for Council, albeit with areas for further improvement.

## 11 Next Steps / Timeline

11.1 Receive the auditor's opinion on 28 September 2017.

11.2 Following adoption of the Annual Report 2016/2017 and Summary Annual Report:

- prepare the documents for publication (hard copies and electronic)
- distribute copies to the necessary statutory agencies, service centres, and libraries; and post online.

<b>12 Attachments</b>
-----------------------

Nil

**8.2 ACTIVITY BALANCES REPORT****Decision Required**

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Matthew McGlinchey, Senior Management Accountant
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-17

**1 Summary**

- 1.1 This report outlines the level of the activity balances as at the end of the 2016/17 financial year and makes recommendations about the management of these balances with a medium to long term view.
- 1.2 Due to the strong financial performance in the 2016/17 year, Council now needs to turn its mind to the management of these balances across all activities in a financially prudent manner.
- 1.3 These balances have been accumulated over time and do not solely relate to the 2016/17 financial year. Since the 2013/14 year all activities have been managed on a closed account basis. In the past some of these deficits and surpluses would have automatically transferred to equity.
- 1.4 A report was presented to Council on 22 June 2017 that used the forecast surplus in some activities to retire debt. These transfers have been actioned in some activities.
- 1.5 A similar report to Council on 22 September 2016 resolved to use the majority of the existing surpluses to repay internal debt. Other uses included carry overs and internal transfers.
- 1.6 The principles around how these balances are managed are driven by the Financial Strategy (Long Term Plan 2015-2025). As such the retirement of debt is a common recommendation. The reported external debt has already been reduced by the net surplus across all activities. Using the activity balance surpluses other than for internal transfers or reduction of internal loans will increase external debt.
- 1.7 In most other instances the balance will be left in the activity with further reports coming back to Council for the management of those funds. Activity balances will be reviewed when addressing funding considerations in the Long Term Plan (2018-28) (LTP). Staff will also ensure that capacity and capability exist to deliver the program of work in the LTP.
- 1.8 The report also seeks funding of \$429k to fund capital expenditure associated with the Tourism Infrastructure Fund (TIF) subject to the TIF decision due in late November. The aim is to complete the co-funded projects by June 2018. Five Council activities are contributing to the funding.

- 1.9 The operating activity balances as at June 2017 total \$16.061m. This report considers operating surpluses/deficits only. Non-operating reserves have a predetermined use e.g. Reserve Financial Contributions.
- 1.10 In summary this report proposes that the surpluses be used;
- to repay internal debt \$1.253m;
  - Transfers between activities \$0.026m
  - to fund carryover projects opex/capx \$1.699m;
  - to remain in the activity \$13.083m.
- 1.11 Attachment 1 provides a full summary of activity balances by Department Manager for each activity. By keeping funds in the activity, Council has a fund to manage cost fluctuations going forward and to use for fit for purpose projects.

<b>2 Draft Resolution</b>
---------------------------

**That the Full Council**

- 1. receives the Activity Balances Report report RCN17-09-17; and**
- 2. approves the use of \$10k to complete an operating project from the Community Facility activity balance, para 4.7.1 of this report;**
- 3. approves the use of \$111k to complete an operating project from the Community Facility activity balance, para 4.7.1 of this report;**
- 4. approves the carryover of \$315k to complete operating projects from the Parks and Reserves activity balance, para 4.7.3 of this report;**
- 5. approves the transfer of \$76k to the Parks and Reserves Emergency budget, para 4.7.4 of this report;**
- 6. approves the carryover of \$8k to complete operating projects from the Special Purpose Committee activity balance, para 4.7.5 of this report;**
- 7. approves the carryover of \$3k to complete operating projects from the Special Grants activity balance, para 4.7.6 of this report;**
- 8. approves the transfer from the general rates growth fund of \$50k to the Special Grants expenditure budget line, para 4.7.6 of this report;**
- 9. approves the carryover of \$23k to complete operating projects from the Community Recreation activity balance, para 4.7.7 of this report;**
- 10. approves the carryover of \$4k to complete operating projects from the Libraries activity balance, para 4.7.10 of this report;**
- 11. approves the use of \$257k to pay off internal loans from the Libraries surplus activity balance, para 4.7.10 of this report;**
- 12. approves the carryover of \$155k to complete operating projects from the Environmental Information activity, para 4.9.2;**
- 13. approves the carryover of \$247k to complete operating projects from the Environmental Policy activity balance, para 4.9.6 of this report;**



14. approves the use of \$111k to pay off internal loans from the Coastal Works general account, para 4.10.1 of this report;
15. approves the use of \$228k to pay off internal loans from the Subsidised Roding surplus activity balance, para 4.10.5 of this report;
16. approves the use of \$100k to pay off internal debt from the Non Subsidised Roding surplus activity balance, para 4.10.6 of this report;
17. approves the use of \$170k to pay off internal loans from the Carpark surplus activity balance, para 4.10.7 of this report;
18. approves the carryover of \$47k to complete operating projects from the Solid Waste general activity, para 4.10.13 of this report;
19. approves \$263k to pay off internal loans from the Solid Waste general activity, para 4.10.13 of this report;
20. approves the carryover of \$102k to complete operating projects from the Stormwater activity, para 4.10.15 of this report;
21. approves the carryover of \$216k to complete operating projects from the Wastewater activity, para 4.10.16 of this report;
22. approves the carryover of \$166k to complete operating projects from the Urban Water activity, para 4.10.17 of this report;
23. approves the use of \$50k for installing solar panels at Brightwater Water Treatment Plant from the Urban Water activity, para 4.10.17 of this report;
24. approves the carryover of \$27k to complete operating projects from the Motueka Water activity, para 4.10.18 of this report;
25. approves the carryover of \$145k to pay off internal loans from the Motueka Water general activity, para 4.10.18 of this report;
26. approves the carryover of \$56k to complete operating projects from the Wai-iti Dam Water Supply activity, para 4.10.22 of this report;
27. approves the carryover of \$8k to complete operating projects from the Hamama Water Supply activity, para 4.10.24 of this report;
28. approves the carryover of \$85k to complete operating projects from the Strategic Policy overhead area, para 4.11.2 of this report;
29. approves the carryover of \$70k to complete operating projects from the Finance overhead area, para 4.11.3 of this report;
30. approves the use of \$429,250 for the capital work associated with the Tourism Improvement Fund projects coming from the following Activities;
  - Parks and Reserves \$264k para 4.7.3
  - Solid Waste \$21k para 4.10.13
  - Non-subsidised Roding \$61k para 4.10.6
  - Wastewater \$69k 4.10.16
  - Strategic Policy \$15k (Feasibility Costs) para 4.11.2

- 31. approves an \$80k contribution towards the grandstand for the All Blacks game in 2018 from the rates growth fund;**
- 32. notes a funding request will be discussed for the NDRA at a workshop on 4 October 2017 with a formal report coming back to Council for agreement;**
- 33. notes a funding request will be discussed for the Nelson Tasman Business Trust at a workshop on 4 October 2017 with a formal report coming back to Council for agreement;**
- 34. notes that where funds are not used they will remain in the activity until a formal report to Council is made to request their release.**

**3 Purpose of the Report**

- 3.1 This report provides recommendations on how to manage the surpluses and deficits in Council activities that have arisen over a number of years.

**4 Background and Discussion****General Discussion**

- 4.1 In September 2013 Council agreed that all areas of the Council be managed financially by way of closed accounts or activity balances. Following that decision all activities now have a surplus/deficit year-end balance against them as at 30 June 2017.
- 4.2 The balances reflected could have been accumulated over a number of years.
- 4.3 A further year's activity has now flowed through and this report will discuss each activity in turn with recommendations provided around the use of the surplus or the repayment of the deficit.
- 4.4 The driving principle of how these funds are managed is governed by the Financial Strategy (adopted as part of the LTP (2015-2025)).
- 4.5 In most instances it is recommended that the balance is left in the activity to meet one-off extraordinary events. They could also be used for Council wide initiatives that arise from the Council's Capability and Capacity Review and the Digital Strategy Project or for projects that reduce risk or make operational savings. Council would approve the release of these funds via a formal report.
- 4.6 The report also seeks funding of \$430k to fund capital expenditure associated with the Tourism Infrastructure Fund (TIF) subject to the TIF decision due in late November. The aim is to complete the co-funded projects by June 2018. Five Council activities are contributing to the funding;
- 4.6.1 Parks and Reserves \$264k
  - 4.6.2 Solid Waste \$21k
  - 4.6.3 Non-subsidised Roothing \$61k
  - 4.6.4 Wastewater \$69k
  - 4.6.5 Strategic Policy \$15k

**4.7 Community Development****4.7.1 Community Facilities**

The activity has a surplus of \$456k which is a decrease of \$66k in 2016/17 (predominantly funded from targeted rates). This balance is a combination of three rates being:

- District Facility Rate
- Shared Facility Rate
- Facilities Operating Rate

The surplus arose predominantly because of an underspend in Saxton field grants.

It is recommended that a \$111k of operating expenditure be carried over from the opening surplus. The projects are included in Attachment 2. It is recommended that a further \$10k is used for the roof anchor points for the Golden Bay Community Facility.

In the recently tabled Capital Carry Over Report it was proposed to carry over \$253k of capital expenditure that arose because of contractual overruns in the Golden Bay Community Facility and fund this via the above surplus. It is proposed the remaining surplus of \$82k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.2 Community Housing

The activity has a surplus of \$181k (predominantly funded from fees and charges).

This is an increase of \$57k from the previous year and is mainly driven by additional revenue driven from a higher occupancy rate than budgeted.

In the recently tabled Capital Carry Over Report it was proposed to carry over \$17k of capital expenditure that is being funded directly from the opening surplus. The activity has no debt associated with it. It is proposed the remaining surplus of \$164k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.3 Parks and Reserves

The activity (funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$1.646m accumulated over three years. This surplus has arisen from contract savings.

It is recommended that we fund capital work for the TIF totaling \$264k. This is for new work associated with toilets around the district and a shower at the Takaka i-site.

It is recommended that a further \$315k of operating expenditure be carried over from the opening surplus. The projects are included in Attachment 2. The activity has no debt associated with it. It is proposed the remaining surplus of \$1.067m stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.4 Parks and Reserves Emergency Fund

As part of the LTP 2015-2025 a budget for emergency events of \$76k was allocated. No funds were spent and it is recommended that these funds are transferred to the Parks and Reserves Emergency budget. Further discussions will occur with Council around Emergency Funds.

#### 4.7.5 Special Purpose Committees

The activity has a surplus of \$570k (predominantly funded from general rates and some fees and charges). This is an increase of \$174k from the previous year and is mainly driven from extra revenue from the McKee Camping ground and the Tasman Recreational Reserve Camping Fees. Some maintenance also did not occur.

It is recommended that a further \$8k of operating expenditure be carried over from the opening surplus. The projects are included in Attachment 2. There is no debt associated with this activity. It is proposed the surplus of \$562k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.6 Council Grants and Cultural Services

The activity has a surplus of \$282k (predominantly funded from general rates). This is an increase of \$63k from the previous year and is mainly driven by additional grants from Creative NZ and funds from Nelson City Council (NCC) for a cycle schools programme.

In 2015/16 Council resolved to fund grants up to \$50k from the surplus associated with additional rates related to growth. This grant will be administered from this area. As such it is recommended that a transfer from the general rates fund is authorised and a budget of \$50k is created for the grant to be paid from the 2017/18 financial year. It is recommended that a further \$3k of operating expenditure is being carried over from the opening surplus. The project is included in Attachment 2.

It is proposed the remaining surplus of \$279k stay in the activity as these grants have a specific purpose.

#### 4.7.7 Community Recreation

The activity has a surplus of \$88k (predominantly funded from general rates). This is an increase of \$20k from the previous year and is mainly driven by one off projects not occurring as quickly as expected.

It is recommended a further \$23k of operating expenditure be carried over from the opening surplus. The projects are included in Attachment 2. It is proposed the surplus of \$65k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.8 Environmental Relations

The activity has a surplus of \$29k which will be left in the activity (predominantly funded from general rates). This balance has arisen as not as many funds were spent on educational material and consultants as budgeted. It is proposed the surplus of \$29k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.9 Museums

The activity has a surplus of \$30k (predominantly funded from a targeted rate). This has arisen due to less maintenance being carried out on museums during the year. It is proposed the surplus of \$30k stay in the activity.

#### 4.7.10 Libraries

The activity has a surplus of \$361k (predominantly funded from general rates). A surplus of \$31k occurred in the 2016/17 financial year as a result of savings across a number of areas.

It is recommended a further \$4k of operating expenditure be carried over from the opening surplus. It is recommended that \$257k is used to retire internal debt. It is proposed the remaining surplus of \$100k stay in the activity.

## 4.8 Corporate Services

### 4.8.1 Camp Grounds

The activity has a surplus of \$59k (predominantly funded from lease income). \$34k of this was achieved from 2016/17 operations by reducing the ground rental payment to Parks and Reserves from the historical level of \$240k p.a. to \$100k, to reflect a viable payment from this account.

Note the overall payments to Parks & Reserves from the full commercial portfolio did not decrease, the difference of \$140k was paid from the Forestry activity.

Income on these assets has risen 39% over the past three years since the implementation of the campground financial strategy in November 2014, despite the business cases for Pohara and Collingwood being deferred until year one of the 2018 Long Term Plan. It is proposed the surplus stay in the activity.

### 4.8.2 Commercial Property

The activity has a deficit of \$95k (predominantly funded from lease income).

Broken down by property this activity comprises:

**Mapua Precinct** with a surplus of \$183k.

For 2016/17 this property made a total net surplus of \$104k, this includes \$300k transferred from Forestry as per Full Council resolution dated 11 May 2017 to part fund upgrade works. \$104k is unspent.

In the recently tabled Capital Carry Over report it was proposed to carry over \$104k in relation to the Jellyfish upgrade project. It is proposed the remaining \$79k stay in the activity.

**11 Fittal Street** with a deficit of \$183k.

For 2016/17 this property made a total net deficit of \$75k due to the property no longer being rented while awaiting sale. This property is currently classified as held for resale with a contract in place.

The expected sale price falls short of the activity deficit and internal loan. The internal loan at 30 June 2017 is \$410k. Once the sale is complete and a final wash up of this account done, a decision will need to be made to determine what to do with any remaining activity deficit.

**183 Queen Street** with a deficit of \$96k.

A rent review was completed February 2017 with an uplift in rent agreed to, which took effect from July 2016. This site needs significant remedial action, currently a number of options for future use and configuration are being explored.

The current rental streams do not allow this activity to return to a surplus in the near future. It is proposed that this deficit stay in the activity until the business case around future options is prepared.

### 4.8.3 Motueka Harbour & Coastal Works Reserve Fund

This has a surplus balance of \$570k. The balance is to stay in this fund as it is built back up from net rental income, and interest and repayments from the Motueka Campground advance.

Any future spend from this account will be applied in line with the Motueka Harbour and Coastal Works Account policy.

#### 4.8.4 Port Tarakohe

This activity has a deficit of \$640k (predominantly funded from fees). Port Tarakohe made a trading loss of \$121k and a cash loss of \$267k after capital and loan movements.

The commencement of the rock contracts in the last three months of 2016/17 saw this activity return to profit in these months. The following significant changes in the year ahead will result in additional revenues:

- Rock contracts,
- Pricing changes for wharfage,
- Commercial marina establishment,
- Fuel facilities,
- Aquaculture growth.

As a result, the Port is anticipated to remain profitable for the near future. It is proposed the deficit stays in the activity in accordance with the Port Development Plan.

#### 4.8.5 Aerodromes

The activity has a deficit of \$21k (predominantly funded from general rates/fees). Motueka Aerodrome has a surplus of \$32k, offset by a deficit relating predominantly to the Takaka Aerodrome.

We are planning to bring the governance and operational aspects of Takaka Aerodrome into line with other commercial assets via the introduction of an Advisory Group and full operational control by Council. It is proposed the deficit stay in the activity.

#### 4.8.6 Forestry

The activity has a surplus of \$5.89m (funded from forestry revenue). The forestry activity had a record year of approximately 42,000 tonnes harvested from the Moturoa/Rabbit Island and Borlase forests. The return to Council is \$2.36m before internal dividends and transfers.

This result is after transferring \$300k to Mapua Precinct as per Full Council resolution dated 11 May 2017. It is proposed the balance stay in the activity as these may fund part of the Waimea Dam project capital costs. This proposal will come back to Council for consideration.

#### 4.8.7 Community Boards

Both Community Boards remain in surplus (in total \$130k) and are managed by the respective boards (funded from targeted rates). The surplus increased by \$34k in 2016/17 as the Motueka Community Board only spent \$11k of its \$49k budget on special projects. It is proposed the balance stay with the activity.

**4.8.8 Business Rates**

The two business rates have a slight surplus of \$7k (predominantly funded from targeted rates). It is proposed the surplus stay in the activity.

**4.8.9 Council/Governance**

The activity (funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$120k. The Council rate every year for a third of the amount that is spent every three years on the local body elections. As the elections occurred in October 2016 the balance declined to accommodate the three years of costs.

**4.8.10 General Disaster Fund**

The fund has a balance of \$3.379m against a target balance of \$6.5m plus inflation. A workshop will be held with Council on 4 October to determine how emergency balances are managed and how the other emergency budgets impacts this fund.

**4.8.11 General Rate Growth Fund**

This fund has a balance of \$218k and is the result of the district having more growth than planned. The extra rates revenue is transferred to a specific account. In 2015/16 Council resolved to fund \$50k for special grants annually if the balance of this account was sufficient. As such paragraph 4.7.6 has recommended this to Council for the 2017/18 financial year.

It is proposed that the balance stay in this activity to deal with costs such as unexpected legal costs associated with, for example, leaky home settlements. Staff will write a report to Council to access these funds. This fund will also be utilised if growth is less than expected.

**4.9 Environment and Planning****4.9.1 Compliance Monitoring**

The activity (funded from general rates and recoveries) has a surplus of \$51k after making a loss for 2016/17 of \$46k due to income from annual charges being down from budget expectations.

It is proposed that the balance of \$51k stay in the activity given that we do not budget for the full legal costs associated with this activity because of their variable nature. Also we cannot always guarantee that fines match the costs incurred.

**4.9.2 Environmental Information**

The activity (predominantly funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$327k due to not completing all budgeted work streams, including carryovers of \$255k from 2015/16 by 30 June 2017.

In the recently tabled Capital Carry Over Report it was proposed to carry over \$105k of capital expenditure. This is being funded directly from the opening surplus.



It is recommended that a further \$155k is used to complete operating projects. These are listed in Attachment 2. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$67k stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.3 **Challies Wetland**

The activity (funded from fees) has a surplus of \$219k and this is tagged for future enhancement work along the Waimea River Park. As such the surplus should be left in the activity.

#### 4.9.4 **Mapua Rehabilitation**

The activity (predominantly funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus of \$29k. The surplus is predominantly from the carried over surplus of \$28k from 2015/16.

The intention is that once the rehabilitated land is sold, the proceeds, along with any other outstanding targeted rate surplus, will go towards repaying the remaining outstanding loans and discontinuing the rate at that point. Council have placed the sale on hold while they consider the wider strategy for the area.

The latest valuation for this land done by Quotable Value as at 30 June 2016 is \$2.7m. The land is to be reviewed as part of a wider Mapua Development Strategy, any eventual sale of this land will be managed by the Property Manager. The internal loan for this activity at 30 June 2017 is \$897k. It is proposed that the surplus of \$29k stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.5 **Sustainable Management**

The activity (predominantly funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$42k, predominantly from the carried over surplus of \$50k from 2015/16. This activity performed close to budget. It is proposed that the surplus stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.6 **Environmental Policy**

The activity (predominantly funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$255k, with \$103k being the opening surplus from 2015/16 and the remaining \$152k the surplus from the 2016/17 results.

Outside of private plan changes which were cost neutral, and Pest Management planning that performed close to budget, the surplus was a result of a combination of additional revenue of \$54k that related to Ministry for the Environment funding, and operating expenditure primarily related to wage allocations being down.

It is recommended that \$247k is used to complete operating projects. Of this \$205k represents requests for new funds and is detailed in Attachment 2. It is proposed that the surplus of \$8k stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.7 **Resource Consents**

The activity has a surplus of \$138k (over half funded from consent fees and the remainder predominantly from general rates).

A large portion of this surplus results from consent hearing deposits received near year-end, with the majority of the costs associated with these consent applications to be incurred in 2017/18. It is proposed that the surplus of \$138k stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.8 Warm Tasman Homes

The activity has a deficit of \$53k (funded from a targeted rate) and reflects the “loans” being carried that will be recovered via targeted rates over time. No new loans are being drawn down.

#### 4.9.9 Emergency Management

The activity (predominantly funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$215k, most of which is a carryover balance from prior years.

A small surplus of \$50k was made in 2016/17 mainly due to staff time and general operating costs on this activity being down on budget. It is proposed that due to the unpredictable nature of Emergency Management costs the surplus of \$215k stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.10 Regulatory

The activity (funded from general rates and fees) has a surplus of \$113k. Just over half of this surplus comes from 2016/17 operations, with fee revenue and recoveries coming in over budget.

It is proposed that the surplus stay in the activity.

#### 4.9.11 Building Control

The activity (predominantly funded from fees) made a deficit of \$600k in 2016/17. This comprises:

- 1) \$416k relating to additional consultancy fees (\$277k) and staff costs (\$267k) required to ensure building consents were processed within statutory timeframes due to a lack of internal capability and extra activity. While this was partially offset in additional income (\$242k) due to the March fee review and increase, it still resulted in a deficit in the account.
- 2) \$223k relating to unbudgeted costs in relation to Weather Tight Home claims, including Council’s legal and consulting fees and some settlement payments made during 2016/17.
- 3) Offset by surpluses of \$39k in the LIMs and development contributions administration accounts.

At the Full Council meeting 22 June 2017 it was resolved to fund these deficits out of overhead activity surpluses. This brings the activity balance back to nil.

#### 4.9.12 Abel Tasman Foreshore Account

The activity (predominantly funded from fees) has a surplus of \$378k and is due to accumulated funds collected from concessionaries operating across the Abel Tasman Foreshore Reserve, net of disbursements.

These funds are collected under a delegated arrangement from the Minister of Conservation and are disbursed in agreement with the Department of Conservation. The surplus will remain in the activity.

#### 4.9.13 **Dog Control**

The activity (predominantly funded from fees and charges) has a surplus of \$33k. \$24.5k of this surplus was from 2016/17 operations of which \$20.5k was for unspent funds received from the Department of Internal Affairs for the menacing dog neutering campaign to be carried over into 2017/18. It is proposed that the surplus stay in the activity.

### 4.10 **Engineering**

#### 4.10.1 **Coastal Works General Account**

The activity (funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$261k. A surplus of \$183k was made in 2016/17 because there were no adverse weather events and costs associated with Jackett Island were not incurred. It is recommended that \$111k of the surplus be used to retire debt. It is proposed that the remaining surplus stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.2 **Torrent Bay**

The activity has a surplus balance of \$217k (predominantly funded from targeted rates). This is an increase of \$47k from last year. This occurred because sand replenishment work is done once every three years while rates are collected evenly across the same period. As such the surplus this year was expected. The next sand replenishment work is planned to occur in 2018/19. It is proposed that the surplus stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.3 **Ruby Bay Seawall**

The activity has a deficit of \$41k (funded from targeted rates). The Annual Plan 2017/2018 has begun to rate to recoup this deficit. The Long Term Plan 2018-2028 will continue to rate to recover this deficit.

#### 4.10.4 **Mapua Stop Bank**

The activity has a surplus of \$62k (funded from targeted rates). The surplus reduced by \$62k in 2016/17 as a result of maintenance work being carried out that was not planned. It is proposed that the surplus of \$62k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.5 **Subsidised Roding**

The activity has a surplus of \$528k. Savings in interest costs were the major contributor to the increase in surplus of \$227k in 2016/17. This was the result of lower debt and less capital being spent than planned.

In the 22 June 2017 report to Council it was recommended that \$986k was transferred to a Roding General Disaster Fund. It represents the surplus associated for rating for emergency work less actual emergency events expenditure net of the NZTA income. Further discussions will occur with Council around emergency funds.

It is recommended that a further \$228k is used to repay internal debt. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$300k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.6 **Non-subsidised Roding**

The activity (predominantly funded from general rates) has a surplus of \$461k. A surplus of \$192k occurred in 2016/17 as a result of interest savings because of better rates and a lower capital spend than forecast.

It is recommended that we fund capital work for the TIF totaling \$61k. This is for new work associated with toilets around the district.

It is recommended that \$100k is used to repay internal debt. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$300k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.7 **Carpark Account**

The activity has a surplus of \$270k (predominantly funded from fees and charges). The surplus has arisen from rental properties in Lower Queen Street that were initially not budgeted for.

It is recommended that \$170k is used to repay internal debt. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$100k stay in the activity for the purchase of land required for car parking.

#### 4.10.8 **Cobb Valley Subsidy/Non Subsidy**

The activity has a surplus of \$250k (part funded from an external agency) and it is proposed this remain in the activity to allow for variable maintenance costs.

#### 4.10.9 **Tasman Great Taste Trail**

The activity has a deficit of \$290k. This was caused by the following;

- Significantly higher maintenance costs due to storm events
- Lower than expected income in the financial year due to a slower recovery of the share of income from the Cycle Trails Trust and the Ministry of Business Innovation and Employment.

However the deficit position is timing in nature with funds expected from the Cycle Trust. At this point the project is focusing on Memorandum of Understandings with land owners and having firm commitments from central Government and the Cycle Trust about ongoing funding.

#### 4.10.10 **Rivers & Flood Protection**

The activity (predominantly funded from targeted rates) has a surplus of \$1.1m. The surplus has arisen because fewer adverse weather events have occurred which means less rock work was required to be undertaken.

A further \$250k is required for capital carry overs as proposed in the recently tabled Capital Carry Over paper. River capital work is all funded directly from rates. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$850k stay in the activity.

**4.10.11 Motueka Flood Control Project**

The activity has an immaterial deficit and an outstanding loan of \$367k. The activity is being funded by a targeted rate set in the Long Term Plan (2015-2025), which will discontinue from June 2020. It is proposed that the deficit stay in the activity.

**4.10.12 Classified Rivers Emergency Fund**

The fund (predominantly funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus of \$1.1m. The fund has reached the Council agreed level of \$1.0m plus inflation. Further discussions will occur with Council around emergency funds.

**4.10.13 Solid Waste General**

The activity (predominantly funded from fees and charges) has a surplus of \$610k. This was the result of \$740k of Special Waste income that was received in 2016/17. Offsetting this increased revenue were one off costs associated with the Commerce Commission.

It is recommended that we fund capital work for the TIF totaling \$21k. This is for new work associated with rubbish compactors around the district.

It is recommended that \$47k is used to complete operating projects. Attachment 2 lists the project and reason for the carry over. It is recommended that \$263k is used to repay internal debt. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$300k stay in the activity as the new Joint Venture with NCC is bedded down.

**4.10.14 Solid Waste - Waste Minimisation**

The activity (funded from an external agency) has a surplus balance of \$392k. It is audited externally by a Government agency and as such can only be used on waste minimisation activities.

The surplus of \$392k will stay in the activity. The Solid Waste Activity Manager will require the remaining funds, as strategies emerge in this area.

**4.10.15 Stormwater**

The activity has a surplus of \$600k. The surplus was agreed to in a report to Council on the 22 June 2017. Internal debt of \$780k was able to be paid off because of savings in interest costs and depreciation.

As part of the LTP (2015-2025) a budget for emergency events of \$100k plus inflation was allocated. No events occurred and as such the 22 June report recommended that this be transferred to the Stormwater Emergency Reserve. Further discussions will occur with Council around emergency funds.

It is recommended that a further \$102k is used to complete operating projects. These are listed in Attachment 2. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$498k stay in the activity.

**4.10.16 Wastewater**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus of \$600k. The surplus was agreed to in a report to Council on the 22 June. Internal debt of \$2.43m was able to

be paid off because of savings in interest costs and because of less Nelson Regional Sewerage Business Unit costs than budgeted.

As part of the LTP (2015-2025) a budget for emergency events of \$75k plus inflation was allocated. No events occurred and as such the 22 June report recommended that this be transferred to the Wastewater Emergency Reserve. Further discussions will occur with Council around emergency funds.

It is recommended that we fund capital work for the TIF totaling \$69k. This is for new work associated with a dump station in Motueka.

It is recommended that a further \$216k is used to complete carried forward operating projects. These are listed in Attachment 2. It proposed that the remaining surplus of \$315k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.17 **Urban Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus balance of \$600k. The surplus was agreed to in a report to Council on the 22 June. Internal debt of \$1.448m was paid because of lower interest rates as the capital works programme has been delayed, less overheads were incurred, and less maintenance work was required.

Engineering Services wish to use the Brightwater Water Treatment Plant as a proof of concept with regard to the use of solar power panels supplementing grid electricity supply in our network. We recommend an amount of \$50k is released from the Urban Water activity surplus to fund this work. The benefits of doing this are both financial in terms of reduced electricity costs and non-financial in terms of building some partial resilience into the network. If successful, the concept will be rolled out more widely across all of Council with the budgets being included in the LTP (2018-2028).

It is recommended that a further \$166k is used to complete operating projects. These are listed in Attachment 2. It proposed that the remaining surplus of \$447k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.18 **Motueka Water**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus of \$372k. The surplus has arisen for a number of reasons, including: lower interest rates as the capital works programme has been delayed; less overheads, and less maintenance work being required.

It is recommended that a further \$27k is used to complete operating projects. Attachment 2 lists the project and the reason for the carry over. It is recommended that internal debt of \$145k be paid off. It is proposed that the remaining surplus of \$200k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.19 **88 Valley Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a deficit of \$74k. Over the life of the LTP (2015-2025) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. The deficit was reduced by \$9k in 2016/17.

It is proposed that over the life of the LTP (2018-2028) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. This would be consistent with the previous LTP.

#### 4.10.20 **Dovedale Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a deficit of \$178k. Over the life of the LTP (2015-2025) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. The deficit was reduced by \$41k in 2016/17.

It is proposed that over the life of the LTP (2018-2028) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. This would be consistent with the previous LTP.

#### 4.10.21 **Redwood Valley Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a deficit of \$152k. Over the life of the LTP (2015-2025) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. The deficit increased by \$14k in 2016/17 as maintenance work was incurred over budget.

It is proposed that over the life of the LTP (2018-2028) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. This would be consistent with the previous LTP.

#### 4.10.22 **Wai-iti Dam Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a deficit of \$61k. Over the life of the LTP (2015-2025) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. It is recommended that a further \$56k is used to complete operating projects. Attachment 2 lists the project and the reason for the carry over.

It is proposed that over the life of the LTP (2018-2028) the opening deficit will be paid off as Council rates more for this scheme. This would align with the intentions of the previous LTP.

#### 4.10.23 **Takaka Firefighting Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus of \$50k. This is an increase of \$4k from the previous year which was less than expected because more maintenance work was carried out during the year than planned. It is proposed that the surplus of \$50k stay in the activity.

#### 4.10.24 **Hamama Water Supply**

The activity (funded from a targeted rate) has a surplus balance of \$43k. The surplus has arisen due to less maintenance work being done than budgeted. It is recommended that a further \$8k is used to complete operating projects. Attachment 2 lists the project and the reason for the carry over. It is proposed that the surplus of \$35k stay in the activity.

#### 4.11 Overhead Areas

4.11.1 Overall there was a surplus of \$1.678m. This balance has been left in these areas to accommodate known funding issues in 2017/18. These include things like:

- increased costs relating to the Nelson Regional Development Agency
- increased contribution re Nelson Tasman Business Trust
- refit work to Richmond Council building
- other work as required.

#### 4.11.2 Strategic Policy

The overhead area has a surplus of \$100k associated with salary saving and not completing some one-off work.

It is recommended that \$85k is carried over for completion of the work as outlined in Attachment 2 which also lists the reason for the carry over.

It is recommended that we fund operating work for the TIF totaling \$15k. This is for a feasibility study.

#### 4.11.3 Finance

The overhead area has a surplus of \$70k associated with salary saving and not completing some one-off work.

It is recommended that \$70k is carried over for completion of the work as outlined in Attachment 2 which also lists the reason for the carry over.

It is recommended that we fund operating work for the TIF totaling \$15k. This is for a feasibility study.

4.11.4 The majority of the surplus relates to the internal Treasury Cost Centre which has a surplus of \$600k as a result of savings due to more favorable interest rates than budgeted for. Reasons include:

- Lower interest rates due to favorable global economic conditions,
- Prudent decision making around the management of Council's Treasury Management function;
- Capital Expenditure only reaching 55% of the planned \$58m spend;
- Direct operating expenditure lower than plan, meaning funds received could be used to retire debt which in turn meant less interest expense.

The reduction in borrowing costs was passed on to the related activities. It is proposed that the surplus of \$600k stay in the activity to allow for the offsetting of future interest rate rises.

#### 4.12 Other Funding Requests

4.12.1 During the year three requests for funding arose that were deferred for consideration when the Annual Report was adopted and the end of year financial position was known.



The first request is from the Tasman Rugby Union supported by the Nelson Regional Development Agency for \$80k to assist with the fit out of Trafalgar Park with temporary seating for the All Blacks Argentina game on 8 September 2018.

The second request is from the Nelson Regional Development Agency for \$100k to support it to implement the Regional Identity Programme. That request is for the 2017/18 year and is likely to be followed by a request, as part of the Long Term Plan, for \$100k ongoing, i.e. in addition to the \$400k Council pays to Nelson City Council to help fund the NRDA's work.

The third was a request from the Nelson Tasman Business Trust for a \$15,000 grant to support their activities with start-up businesses in the Tasman area.

The Tasman Rugby Union has successfully bid for the All Blacks v Argentina game to be held at Trafalgar Park on 8 September 2018. The Union's bid was supported by the Nelson Regional Development Agency (NRDA) and the Nelson City Council Marketing Events Development Programme. I understand that their investment is around \$300k in addition to a significantly larger contribution from three private investors.

Trafalgar Park is to be fully fitted out with portable seating to give it a 20,000-seat capacity. There is a shortfall of \$80k in the seating budget. The request to the Tasman District Council is to contribute the \$80k towards 'creating the stadium'.

The event provides a significant opportunity for 'locals' to attend an international rugby event. It will also build the profile of the region and will be used by the NRDA as a key part of the 2018 Regional Identity marketing campaign activities.

The projected visitor spend from the event is \$9.2 million based on the assumption that 40% of the attendees come from outside the region.

The September timing of the event fits very well with the strategy of attracting activity in the shoulder seasons. The NRDA is intending to use the event to profile the region pre and post event, especially to our higher-value domestic, Australian, UK and the emerging South American markets.

The primary motivation for recommending that Council consider a grant from its 2016/17 operating surplus is to help provide the 20,000 seats. There are co-benefits as well that the Council should consider.

In March this year the NRDA updated the Joint Committee of the Nelson and Tasman Councils on the focus areas proposed in its 2017-18 Statement of Intent. The Regional Identity Project was the priority. A request was made for the two Councils to make an additional \$200k investment (\$100k per Council) to assist the NRDA implement the Regional Identity programme in a timely manner.

This request was focused on two specific areas of activity:

1. The development of the regional identity investment cases, with a focus on understanding and enhancing the attraction and retention of private sector capital in the region. The initial focus will be in adding value through technology and innovation in the food and beverage and marine, maritime and aquaculture industries with the visitor and forestry sectors likely to follow.
2. The execution of a domestically focused consumer facing talent and visitor attraction programme.

The NRDA noted that a further request for funding would be made through the respective Long Term Plan processes and where possible would align with central Government funding programmes and timetables.

Nelson City Council has confirmed their commitment by allocating \$100k in their 2017/18 Annual Plan. Because Tasman had no formal Annual Plan process for 2017/18, it was proposed that the request be considered at this time when our year-end operating position became known.

A memo from the NRDA CEO outlining the proposal is attached as Attachment 3. The matter of any ongoing funding commitment will be considered at the Council workshop on 4 October 2017 for possible inclusion in the Long Term Plan.

The Nelson Tasman Business Trust (NTBT) presented at the Community Development Committee meeting on 6 April 2017, requesting \$15k be added into the Council's Annual Plan to assist them provide advice to start-up businesses in the Nelson Tasman area, rather than them having to go through the contestable community grants process. As Council did not consult on its Annual Plan, the Council did not have the opportunity to consider granting the NTBT's request.

At its April meeting, the Community Development Committee resolved:

**CD17-04-1**

**That the Community Development Committee notes that the request from the Nelson Tasman Business Trust for additional funding for the 2017/2018 year will be brought back to Council for consideration at the time when the year-end surplus and carry forwards are discussed.**

Due to the uncertainty over the funding request the NTBT applied for funding through Council's Community Grants process. It was allocated \$6k from Community Grants for the 2017/18 year. The allocation is \$11k less than the NTBT's request in April.

- 4.12.2 Given that there is a connection and alignment between the work of the NRDA and the NTBT, staff recommend that the decision on any additional funding for the NTBT be discussed, along with the NRDA funding, at the 4 October 2017 workshop.

## 5 Options

- 5.6 **Option 1** – Not approve the recommendations.

If Council did not endorse the recommendations staff would require direction about what to do with the management of activity balances. More work would be undertaken with staff coming back to Council once this work was complete to get further direction.

- 5.7 **Option 2** – Approve the recommendations.

Staff will action the recommendations.

- 5.8 **Option 3** – Some recommendations are approved and others are declined. The specific impact will need to be discussed at the meeting. Staff would action the approved recommendations and provide Council with the associated impact on rates, debt etc. at a Long Term Plan (2018-2028) workshop.

**6 Strategy and Risks**

- 6.6 There is a reputational risk should Council not been seen to balance the opportunities the overall surplus creates and the need for financial prudence in particular the strong emphasis in the Financial Strategy for reducing debt.

**7 Policy / Legal Requirements / Plan**

- 7.6 There are no policy or legal matters that require further consideration.

**8 Consideration of Financial or Budgetary Implications**

- 8.6 With several committed projects from 2016/2017 year under way, the carryover of funding is necessary to prevent an impact on the current year's budgets and a reduction in the current work programmes.
- 8.7 The impact of the operational surplus is already reflected in the reported external debt. Using the activity balances surpluses other than for internal transfers or reduction of internal loans will increase external debt.
- 8.8 Reductions in internal loans and deficit balances will reduce funding requirements for the activity going forward. All other things being equal this will assist in holding rates and fees and charges at or below the level proposed.
- 8.9 Holding reasonable surpluses within an activity provides for financial resilience.

**9 Significance and Engagement**

- 9.6 This is a matter of low significance in terms of the Council's policy on significance and engagement therefore I consider engagement with the Community is not required for making decisions contained within this report.
- 9.7 The management of surpluses is of low to moderate public interest as the recommendations all use the balances for the benefit of the ratepayer, and are guided by the Financial Strategy as part of the LTP (2015-2025).

**10 Conclusion**

- 10.6 Activity balances have been reviewed with a recommendation made on the prudent management of the surplus/deficit position in that activity. The recommendations balance debt reduction, financial resilience and additional operational spending. They will also assist in rates reductions in the medium term.

**11 Next Steps / Timeline**

- 11.6 The impact of the decisions made will be reported back to Council as part of the Long Term Plan (2018-2028).

**12 Attachments**

- |    |                                       |    |
|----|---------------------------------------|----|
| 1. | Activity Balances Summary             | 37 |
| 2. | List of Carryovers 2017/18            | 39 |
| 3. | NRDA Memo Regional Identity Programme | 43 |



**Summary of Activity Balances**

ENVIRONMENT & PLANNING	Opening Balance	Movement 16/17	Current Closing Balance	Repay Internal Loans	Fund Carry Overs	Transfers	Remaining Balance
BUILDING CONTROL	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT	579,904	262,037	841,941	0	(402,000)	0	439,941
EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT	165,631	49,732	215,362	0	0	0	215,362
REGULATORY SERVICES	53,943	92,190	146,133	0	0	0	146,133
<b>TOTAL ENVIRONMENT &amp; PLANNING</b>	<b>799,479</b>	<b>403,959</b>	<b>1,203,437</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>(402,000)</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>801,437</b>
<b>ENGINEERING</b>							
COASTAL STRUCTURES	331,903	167,004	498,907	(111,000)	0	0	387,907
RIVERS & FLOOD PROTECTION	1,299,769	(158,778)	1,100,990	0	0	0	1,100,990
ROADING	937,675	281,046	1,218,721	(498,000)	(61,000)	0	659,721
SOLID WASTE	474,786	528,293	1,003,079	(242,000)	(68,000)	0	693,079
STORMWATER	394,289	205,711	600,000	0	(102,000)	0	498,000
WASTEWATER	712,492	(187,492)	525,000	0	(285,000)	0	240,000
WATER SUPPLY	473,236	125,834	599,070	(145,000)	(307,000)	0	147,070
<b>TOTAL ENGINEERING</b>	<b>4,584,149</b>	<b>961,618</b>	<b>5,545,767</b>	<b>(996,000)</b>	<b>(823,000)</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>3,726,767</b>
<b>COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>							
SPECIAL PURPOSE COMMITTEES	395,028	174,615	569,643	0	(8,000)	0	561,643
LIBRARIES	329,756	221,207	550,962	(257,000)	(4,000)	0	289,962
MUSEUMS	(8,204)	37,823	29,619	0	0	0	29,619
PARKS & RESERVES	1,191,889	528,785	1,720,674	0	(315,000)	(78,000)	1,307,674
ENVIRONMENTAL RELATIONS	24,163	4,485	28,648	0	0	0	28,648
COUNCIL GRANTS	219,639	12,625	232,264	0	(3,000)	50,000	279,264
COMMUNITY FACILITIES	522,196	(65,996)	456,201	0	(121,000)	0	335,201
COMMUNITY HOUSING	123,553	57,348	180,901	0	0	0	180,901
COMMUNITY RECREATION	67,665	20,499	88,164	0	(23,000)	0	65,164
<b>TOTAL COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>	<b>2,865,624</b>	<b>992,391</b>	<b>3,858,015</b>	<b>(257,000)</b>	<b>(474,000)</b>	<b>(26,000)</b>	<b>3,101,015</b>
<b>COUNCIL ENTERPRISES</b>							
AERODROMES	(177)	(21,034)	(21,211)	0	0	0	(21,211)
FORESTRY	4,364,811	1,528,925	5,893,736	0	0	0	5,893,736
PORTS	(372,888)	(266,624)	(639,511)	0	0	0	(639,511)
COMMERCIAL PROPERTY	(138,653)	43,471	(95,182)	0	0	0	(95,182)
CAMPING GROUNDS	24,795	34,463	59,259	0	0	0	59,259
<b>TOTAL COUNCIL ENTERPRISES</b>	<b>3,877,888</b>	<b>1,319,203</b>	<b>5,197,091</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>5,197,091</b>
<b>GOVERNANCE</b>							
BUSINESS RATE	5,664	1,434	7,098	0	0	0	7,098
COMMUNITY BOARD	84,653	34,877	129,530	0	0	0	129,530
COUNCIL/GOVERNANCE	84,495	35,136	119,631	0	0	0	119,631
<b>TOTAL GOVERNANCE</b>	<b>184,812</b>	<b>71,447</b>	<b>256,259</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>256,259</b>
<b>TOTAL OPERATIONAL ACTIVITY BALANCES</b>	<b>12,311,953</b>	<b>3,748,617</b>	<b>16,060,569</b>	<b>(1,253,000)</b>	<b>(1,699,000)</b>	<b>(26,000)</b>	<b>13,082,569</b>
<b>NON OPERATIONAL ACTIVITY BALANCES</b>							
DEVELOPMENT CONTRIBUTIONS	(535,816)	2,179,911	1,644,095	0	0	0	1,644,095
RESERVE FINANCIAL CONTRIBUTIONS	5,195,913	531,659	5,727,572	0	0	0	5,727,572
MOTUEKA HARBOUR & COASTAL WORKS ACCOUNTS	395,280	174,358	569,638	0	0	0	569,638
WARM TASMAN HOMES	(108,195)	55,307	(52,887)	0	0	0	(52,887)
CHALLIES WETLAND	216,058	3,571	219,629	0	0	0	219,629
ABEL TASMAN FORESHORE	364,840	12,848	377,688	0	0	0	377,688
RATES GROWTH RELATED	53,200	215,644	268,844	0	(80,000)	(50,000)	138,844
RIVERS EMERGENCY FUND	1,000,577	108,423	1,109,000	0	0	0	1,109,000
STORMWATER DISASTER FUND	102,500	108,044	210,904	0	0	0	210,904
PARKS DISASTER FUND	34,339	0	34,339	0	0	76,000	110,339
WASTEWATER DISASTER FUND	0	75,000	75,000	0	0	0	75,000
ROADING DISASTER FUND	800,161	986,128	1,786,289	0	0	0	1,786,289
GENERAL DISASTER FUND	2,878,224	500,785	3,379,009	0	0	0	3,379,009
<b>TOTAL NON OPERATIONAL ACTIVITY BALANCES</b>	<b>10,397,081</b>	<b>4,952,038</b>	<b>15,349,119</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>(80,000)</b>	<b>26,000</b>	<b>15,295,119</b>
<b>TOTAL ACTIVITY BALANCES</b>	<b>22,709,034</b>	<b>8,700,655</b>	<b>31,409,688</b>	<b>(1,253,000)</b>	<b>(1,779,000)</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>28,377,688</b>



## Tasman District Council Capital Carry Overs 2016/17 to 2017/18

Description	GL Code	Actual Expenditure \$	Approved budget (incl. previous carryovers) \$	Committed Works \$	Work to be initiated \$	Carry over to 2017/18 Budget \$	Reason for Carry Over	Expected Completion Date
<b>Environmental Information</b>								
O'Connor's Deep Bore	02166106	30,000	88,000	88,000	-	58,000	This is for the drilling of the O'Connors deep bore and setting up the monitoring equipment. the bore is to act as a sentenal bore for the deep Moutere aquifer where it runs under the Redwood zone. The drilling and testing project is now complete and is ready to be paid. The monitoring equipment is also covered within this carry over.	Oct-17
Richmond Air Quality Mmonitoring	02006101	-	35,000	55,000	55,000	20,000	The present monitoring unit is no longer able to be repaired and is required via an National Environmental Standard (NES-AQ) to run uninterrupted. We have a capital item in the budget to replace the existing unit with its modern equivalent. The present NES-AQ is under review and is now likely to also include additional monitoring requirements. In order to accomodate this and not be left with an inadequate machine we need to get one with the capability to cover monitoring both PM10 and PM2.5. This is more expensive than budgetted and is subject to exchange rate fluctuation.	Dec-17
Ground water monitoring site upgrades	02136103	75,000	90,000	90,000	15,000	15,000	The budgetted ground water monitoring site upgrade programme was delayed due to a requirement to initiate additional sites developed on the Wairoa, Lee and Roding Rivers. The programme is therefore behind schedule, but will be completed this financial year.	Jun-18
Wairoa at Irvines hydrometric site	02196106	45,000	50,000	57,000	12,000	12,000	Close out the old site including last lease payment and removal of the existing stilling tower.	May-18
<b>Total Environmental Information</b>						<b>105,000</b>		
<b>Rivers and Flood Control</b>								
Rivers Capital Works X	3310620806	33,434	441,121	250,000		250,000	Motueka Stopbank enhancement, designed, ready to be tendered	Feb-18
<b>Total Rivers and Flood Control</b>						<b>250,000</b>		
<b>Solid Waste</b>								
Eves Valley Landfill Consenting	07016211007R	0	30,000		30,000	900	This consent will be funded by NTRLBU but this budget is required for Mariri contingency	
Eves Valley Landfill leachate improvements	07016211008	10,253	34,736	24,483	0	24,483	Improvements committed and due for completion in August	
Eves Valley Landfill planting	07016211004	17,169	96,894	16,500	63,225	27,831	Planting in June-July, further work programmed May-June	
Mariri Compactor and Pit Improvements	07036211013	428,990	1,210,400	781,410	0	781,410	The construction contract commenced in July 2017	
RRC Computers	07026107	-	10,424		10,424	10,424	These computers are due for replacement	
Takaka renewals	07116211018	40,079	57,370	-	17,291	17,291	Further drainage renewals is due this year	
<b>Total Solid Waste</b>						<b>862,339</b>		
<b>Stormwater</b>								
Richmond central improvements	06146216014	1,899,760	3,639,139	1,739,379		1,739,379	Works occuring.	
Pohara Main Settlement flood works	06316216001	46,199	876,892		830,693	830,693	Funding to do bunding and culvert upgrade works.	
Lower Queen Street Stormwater Pipework Upgrade	06146216003	190,919	1,809,617		987,086	987,086	Lower Queen St work still to be initiated.	
Borck Creek/Poutama Drain Widening 16/17	06146216046	18,830	70,000		51,170	51,170	For Borck Creek widening works	
Washbourn Gardens Stormwater Bypass	0601621637	183,262	270,000		86,738	86,738	Detailed design phase.	
Growth Allowance for Stormwater Infrastructure	0601621627	25,707	88,607		62,900	62,900	As required for contributions to development works.	
Secondary Flow Management Initiatives	0601621633	-	5,953		155,394	149,441	Dev. Cont. towards Arizona 2/9ths drain widening and extended pipe network.	Dec-17
Ned's Creek Flood Prevention Works Stage 2	0601621629	7,446	10,424		17,871	17,871	Initial modelling and possible drain widening work.	
Stormwater Modelling	06146216048	214,423	813,187		100,000	100,000	Secondary flowpath modelling and field verification.	
<b>Total Stormwater</b>						<b>4,025,277</b>		
<b>Wastewater</b>								
Richmond Central Improvements - Queen St	09226200008					21,229	Need extra funds	
Headingley Lane Wastewater Main	09206200028R					442,250	Council Resolution 13 April 17. CF needed	
Lower Queen St Water and Sewer Pipelines	09226200015R					1,092	CF needed	
Safety Improvements	09016200001	54,528	95,427	6,702	17,967	40,899	This is actually what didn't get spent in 16/17. It is lower than what Matt has (\$40,899) due to Confirm/MagiQ issues.	
New Telemetry	09226200020	272,341	319,909	62,061	-14,493	47,568	Over spend, carry remainder forward, note this is more than Matt has estimated	
45 Trewavas St PS New Storage	0920620047					62,605	Design complete, need extra \$140k	
Rehabilitation of Wetwells	09226200021					152,728	Design started	
Mechanical & Electrical Renewals at Pump Stations & WWTPs	09016216	345,857	478,996	17,612	115,527	133,139		
<b>Total Wastewater</b>						<b>901,510</b>		
<b>Water Supply</b>								
Re-zoning - Talbot St	08016215081I	0	71,012		71,012	71,012	Part of wider renewals work	
District Bulk Meter Renewal Programme	0801621578	46,941	66,716		19,775	19,775	Ongoing programme of renewals	
Backflow Prevention Programme	08016215087	10,870	98,090	87,220		87,220	Ongoing programme of renewals	
Occupational Health & Safety	0801621579	26,231	40,000	13,769		13,769	Needed to complete works	

Description	GL Code	Actual Expenditure \$	Approved budget (incl. previous carryovers) \$	Committed Works \$	Work to be initiated \$	Carry over to 2017/18 Budget \$	Reason for Carry Over	Expected Completion Date
Motueka Reticulation Renewal Programme	08026215005	13,462	30,690		17,228	17,228	Part of wider upgrade programme to water supply	
88 Valley Reticulation Renewal Programme	08046215006	70,337	104,244	33,867		33,907	Ongoing programme of renewals	
Redwood Reticulation Renewal Programme	08066215017	78,818	120,000	41,182		41,182	Needed to complete works	
District Valve Renewals	08016215051	21,927	107,295		85,368	85,368	Ongoing programme of renewals	
District Pump Renewal Programme	0801621577	61,968	104,244		42,276	42,276	Ongoing programme of renewals	
District Telemetry Upgrade	08016215059	90,453	113,060	22,607			Committed Needed to complete works	
Redwoods Treatment	08066215022	0	59,383		59,383	59,383	Design underway	
Pohara Treatment Plant	08016215107	0	10,230		10,230	10,230	Design underway	
Fauchell Darcy	08016215002	737,848	1,308,508	570,660		570,660	Committed ongoing works	
Pohara WTP	08576215002	52,421	163,680	111,259		111,259	Committed preparation works for upgrade	
Parker Street WTP )	08026215009	21,850	658,690		636,840	636,840	Design underway	
Parker Street WTP )	08146215009	0	285,797		285,797	285,797	Design underway	
Seismic Inspection and Remediation	08016215080	94,829	288,588	193,759		193,759	Works in progress	
Collingwood WTP - Treatment Upgrade	08226215004	98,327	120,001		21,674			
Richmond Lower Queen Street main upsize	08016215076	768,430	75,010	739,500		344,990	Council resolution 13th April	
Richmond Reticulation - Church Street Main Renewal	08016215070	337,554	0	257,554		337,554	Council resolution 27 July 80K used else where	
Kaiteriteri Treatment Upgrade	08236215005	253,290	1,225,154	971,864		266,831	Council resolution for additional \$5500k	
Richmond Central Improvement, Queen Street - Water main rene	08016215009	1,397,520	2,013,430	615,910		125,254		
<b>Total Water</b>						<b>3,398,575</b>		
<b>Coastal</b>								
Coastal Structures Renewals	1002621010R	1,753	32,823	31,070	-	31,070	Committed to Mapua Wharf repair (part of Jellyfish building repair project)	Sep-17
<b>Total Coastal</b>						<b>31,070</b>		
<b>Roading</b>								
Richmond Central Improvements - Queen Street Town Centre Ren	0571620014	1,398,388	3,019,601	1,615,337		647,304	Project under construction	Apr-18
Kerb and Channel	0504620005	31,844	185,890	154,045		154,045	Darcy St and Florence St committed, part of water renewal contract under construction	Sep-17
Bateup Road Widening	0556620030	139,166	273,361	134,195		134,195	Detailed design underway, to be tendered late 2017. Construction starting 2017/18	Oct-18
District-wide Footpaths New & Rehabilitation	0502620002	28,598	104,244	75,646		75,646	Darcy St and Florence St committed, part of water renewal contract under construction	Sep-17
New Footpaths	0502620012	33,285	83,395	50,110		50,110	Various sites not completed. Contract currently being prepared	Jun-18
Carpark Resurfacing	05016200	822	14,229	13,407		13,407	Will Watch carpark deferred	Mar-18
Minor Improvements	0425620001	728,132	983,936	255,804		255,804	Programme of works committed.	Jun-18
<b>Total Roothing</b>						<b>1,330,511</b>		
<b>Community Facilities</b>								
Aquatic Centre - Plant	28126103	40,171	125,092			84,921	Committed funding for water treatment, electrical switchboards and lighting. This work was not completed due to staff vacancies in the property team.	Apr-18
Aquatic Centre - Building	28126106	18,815	84,647		190,000	65,832	The pool re-tiling is due to be undertaken in March 2018. Current quotes are \$180,000+	Apr-18
Golden Bay Community Facility	28136106I					253,000		
Saxton Development	2806610602G					538,464	Champion Rd Access	Jun-18
Velodrome	2806610603					108,000	Completion of the Velodrome	
<b>Total Community Facilities</b>						<b>1,050,217</b>		
<b>Community Housing</b>								
Community Housing - Aotea Flats	15516106	71,387	88,485	From underspend		17,098	To continue with the insulation and heat pump installations programme in the cottages	
<b>Total Community Housing</b>						<b>17,098</b>		
<b>Reserve Financial Contributions</b>								
Walkways/Esplanades	30316106		33,000			33,000		
Playgrounds General	3031610638		133,000	65,000		133,000	To finish project at Takaka Memorial Reserve	43070
Land Purchases	3033610504	476,300	516,359			40,059	To purchase Wakefield land	
Playground General	3033610640R	54,678	118,742			64,064		
Toilets General	3033610649	17,310	26,061			8,751		
DILS WAIMEA WAIMEA RIVER PARK	3033610676G		2,068			2,068		
Walkways General	3033610679		34,529			34,529		
Walkways Rural 3	3033610680G		18,398			18,398	Development of walkway from Westmere Road to Stagecoach Road also in Appleby Est subdivision	
Walkways Waimea Inlet	3033610681G		10,000			10,000		
Sportsfields/Tennis Courts	3033610682	4,520	155,880			151,360		
Tennis Courts	3033610683R		33,358			33,358		
Land Purchases	30346105		93,000			93,000		
Community Projects	3034610603		35,805			35,805		
Walkways General	3034610605	2,129	15,637			13,508		



Description	GL Code	Actual Expenditure \$	Approved budget (incl. previous carryovers) \$	Committed Works \$	Work to be initiated \$	Carry over to 2017/18 Budget \$	Reason for Carry Over	Expected Completion Date
DILS - Mot - Walkways Gen - Ca	3034610605G		33,179			33,179		
DILS MOT Purchase New Reserve	3034610648		255,750			255,750	To fund land purchase Sports park Motueka	
DILS MOT TOILETS GENERAL	3034610650		20,000			20,000		
Motueka Quay Carpark/Landscaping	3034610665		50,000			50,000	To finish area of landscaping	
Sportsfields General	3034610672		52,122			52,122		
Picnic Area/Gardens General	3034610673		20,654			20,654		
Playgrounds General	3034610675	1,809	137,075	\$65,000 Marahau Playground		135,266	Working iwth the Marahau Community and rest for a new playground at Nga Piko Place Reserve	
Sportspark - New Field develop	3034610678G		137,216			137,216	Saving for Sportspark Motueka	
DILs - Richmond - Security Cam	3035610104	-	20,849			20,849		
Walkways General	3035610601	29,935	88,316			58,381		
DILS - Richmond - Walkways Cap	3035610602	-	7,818			7,818		
DILS RICH NEW RESERVES	3035610618	-	104,244			104,244		
Saxton Velodrome	3035610619	12,498	100,000			87,502	Committed to finalising the velodrome project	
DILs - Richmond - Estuary Wall	3035610620G	-	16,251			16,251		
Toilets General	3035610640	-	227,198			227,198		
Picnic Area/Gardens General	3035610644	-	20,424			20,424		
Community Project	3035610645	16,392	36,849			20,457		
Rich Waimea River Park	3035610650G	-	127,078			127,078	In conjunction with Engineering continue to develop the river park	
Sportsgrounds general	3035610651	-	88,607			88,607		
Picnic Area/Gardens General	3035610652	-	5,000			5,000		
DILS Consulting	30012203	2,204	38,271			36,067	The work programme is behind and this funding will be needed to assist with projects in the various wards which have been carried over into the 2017/2018 year.	
DILS Valuation Costs	30012205	5,926	11,320			5,394	This funding is needed for ongoing reserve purchases.	
DILS GOLDEN BAY WALKWAYS	3031240105		26,375			26,375		
DILS GB PICNIC AREAS GENERAL	3031240137		21,961			21,961		
Art Works	3031240148		21,000			21,000	At the request of the GB Community Board	
GB Gardens General	3031240801		20,000			20,000		
DILS GLDN BAY EAST TAKA RES CU	3031253412	419	6,481			6,062		
Coastcare	3031253423		41,395			41,395		
GB Small Wharf rebuild	3031253437		40,000			40,000	At the request of the GB Community Board	
DILS GLDN BAY TAKA DRAMA SOC R	3031253439		40,000			40,000	At the request of the GB Community Board	
DILS WAIMEA PICNIC AREAS GEN	3033240170		2,340			2,340		
Waimea Garden General	3033240171		30,185			30,185		
Waimea Cemetery General	3033240172		20,685	15,000		20,685	Development of Natural Burial and Bhutanese areas at Spring Grove Cemetery	
Coastcare	3033240173	10,124	47,375			37,251		
DILS MOT COASTCARE	3034240105		35,676			35,676		
DILS MOT MUSEUM	3034240120		24,000			24,000		
DILs Motueka - Landscape Work	3034240148		15,000			15,000		
DILS MOT MOT CEMETERY	3034240171		14,479			14,479	To design and install way finding signage	
Mot WW Tapu/Stephens	3034240185		30,000			30,000	To continue with Anarewa Cres project	
Mot Picnic General	3034240186	1,188	9,000			7,812		
Mot Garden Goodman Pond	3034240187		1,612			1,612		
Mot Garden Artwork	3034240188		20,000			20,000		
Motueka Quay Wharf Repair	3034240192		48,000			48,000	At the request of the Motueka Community Board	
Mot Lib Invest & Concept Plans	3034240193		25,000			25,000		
DILS MOT KEEP MOT BEAUTIFUL	3034253409	5,676	10,441			4,765	Operational and capital actuals combined.	
Riwaka Rugby Ground (DSIR)	3034253423		14,500			14,500		
DILS RICH DELLSIDE TRACKS	3035240101	4,150	23,621			14,985		
DILs Richmond - Waimea River Park	3035240197	-	10,240			10,240		
<b>Total Reserve Financial Contributions</b>						<b>2,773,680</b>		
<b>Council Enterprises</b>								
Jellyfish Upgrade Shed 1 Mapua Precinct	10032526 & 1003610601	196,311	657,000	571,032	All spent as at 22/8/17 last invoices to come in	104,000	Jellyfish upgrade. 2017/18 has a capital budget of \$357k. The \$104k is unspent from the Forestry funds to be carried over. This project is complete just needs final invoices to come in	Aug-17
Port Tarakohe Marina and Fuel Berth	1020621003	5000	1,350,000	1,277,270	1,277,270	1,345,000	Offsite manufacturer underway, no progress claim until contract conditions are met (i.e. Bond)	Dec-17
<b>Total Council Enterprises</b>						<b>1,449,000</b>		
<b>Property</b>								
Earthquake Strengthening	25016106061	26,845	315,870			289,025	Ongoing earthquake strengthening work to be carried out on various Council owned buildings	Jun-18
Generator	2560610603	0	80,000			80,000	Upgrade the power generator at the main building	Jun-18
<b>Total Property</b>						<b>369,025</b>		





# Memorandum

<b>To:</b>	Lindsay Mckenzie, CE, TDC	<b>Date:</b>	15.08.17
<b>CC:</b>			
<b>From:</b>	Mark Rawson		
<b>Subject:</b>	Regional Identity & Growth Programme update		

## 1.0 Background

In March 2017 NRDA provided an update to the Joint Councils Committee on focus areas for the 2017-18 Statement of Intent. In particular the update focused on the Regional Identity project and a request for consideration of an additional \$200,000 investment (\$100K / Council) to be provided to NRDA to assist with enabling a higher impact in a more timely manner execution of the Regional Identity. This request was focused on two specific areas of activity:

1. The development of the regional identity investment cases, with a focus on understanding and enhancing the attraction and retention of private sector capital in the region. The initial focus will be in adding value through technology and innovation in the Food and Beverage and Marine, Maritime and Aquaculture industries with the Visitor and Forest sectors likely to follow.
2. The execution of a domestically focused consumer facing talent and visitor attraction programme.

This request was made with the intention of expediting the delivery of these two aspects of the Regional Identity to provide future input to the funders Long Term Plan processes and where possible align with central government funding programmes and timetables.

NCC confirmed their commitment through and allocation of \$100,000 in their 2017/18 Annual Plan and we were advised that due to TDC having no formal annual plan process for 2017/18, there would be consideration given to the request post the year-end operating position becoming known.

Driven by the objectives set out in the foundation NRDA 2016/17 Statement of Intent (Sol), the focus of our first year has been one of setting a solid foundation with robust partnerships in place from which to progress execution over the coming years. The initial focus was to get the new merged organisation fit-for-purpose with a clear business plan. Delivery of the first phase of the Regional Identity, while maintaining core business service delivery has been achieved within a balanced budget. We are pleased to be able to report that we have achieved all the desired outcomes set out for us within the five key performance areas of the 2016-17 Sol.

In summary, the economy is performing well with a positive shift to a more diversified base that is focussed on the added-value end of the market. Given the significant competitive advantages in primary production growing conditions, the diverse mix of people, outstanding natural landscapes, clever businesses and extraordinary lifestyle conditions. The future opportunity to assist in raising incomes and spreading the wealth of the region will be based around sustainably adding as much value as possible through technology and innovation to the core primary production industries while also capitalising on the visitor and talent experience offerings of the region. NRDA is focused on facilitating a contribution towards these outcomes where possible through the future execution of the regional identity including the development of the approach to Government for the wider region to become engaged in the MBIE-led Regional Growth Programme.

## 2.0 Current Situation

### 2.1 Regional Identity Investment Cases (Regional Growth Programme)

There is an opportunity to get greater alignment and clarity of the economic development priorities for a whole region with a clearly defined growth action plan and collective level of commitment to implementation. The aim of this approach is getting alignment between the key public entities, Iwi and the private sector to create an environment that will stimulate confidence in investment decision making.



Page 2



Over the past few months we have been working with the Councils, MBIE, MPI, Iwi, the Chambers of Commerce and Nelson Marlborough Institute of Technology (NMIT) around the development of a Top of the South collective regional growth strategy approach. This would take the form of a Top of the South (Te Tau Ihu) Regional Growth programme developed in partnership with central government through MBIE and MPI. There are currently ten other such programmes underway in NZ, we currently have a co-signed letter from the Mayors of the region and the NRDA Chair, requesting the Minister of Economic Development's consideration for Te Tau Ihu to partner with government in the development of a Regional Growth Programme.

The development of the Nelson Tasman components of the regional growth programme will take its direction from the Regional Identity strategy and will have a focus on understanding and enhancing the attraction and retention of private sector capital in the region. The initial focus will be in adding value through technology and innovation in the Food and Beverage and Marine, Maritime and Aquaculture industries with the Visitor and Forest sectors likely to follow.

In summary, the regional growth programme is designed to get an aligned view of:

1. **Understanding the drivers** for the attraction and/or retention of private capital in the regional identity focus areas.
2. **Identifying the opportunities** to strengthen regional competitive advantage and/or the removal of barriers to investment attraction and/or retention whether it be from existing or new sources.
3. Resourcing a regionally-led **programme of action** to achieve the desired outcomes.

By way of example some of the likely outcomes are around the flow of Government investment into the region to align with the local government, Iwi, education and private sector investment priorities and commitments. This could include:

- **Infrastructure investment** priorities that enable sustainable economic growth, such as: Roads, Water, Telecommunications, Visitor industry needs.
- **Programme investment** that enable sustainable economic growth, in particular around adding value through technology and innovation in the core primary sectors. Programmes such as: education, innovation, R&D, science, export and marketing.

The opportunity to commit to and partner with government around this programme will require a level of personnel and financial commitment from the region. In a Tasman District Council context, the proposed approach is for a significant part of the proposed additional \$100K investment in NRDA for Regional Identity investment case's to be utilised as a commitment to the programme, as NCC have already done. The Government will also be investing a significant amount. The levels of commitment and timeframes will not be known until an approach can be agreed which starts with the Ministers approval.

#### **2.2 Regional Identity Strategy and Tools production.**

In June, we delivered the Nelson Tasman Regional Identity Framework, designed to provide clarity and alignment of focus around the unique and compelling attributes of the Nelson Tasman region, to the Councils and over 100 stakeholders. With well over 150 local stakeholders and a range of external customers involved, it has been very satisfying to see the positive community engagement and reaction to the five key identity story pillars. Based on reflecting an identity that is authentic to the people of the region, while also meeting the aspirations of those external to the region the focus is now on inspiring others to engage with and own the sharing of the identity story. The primary audience focus of the identity framework is Talent, Visitors and Locals.

We are currently working in partnership with the regional creative collaboration "Fruit Salad", established specifically for the project, on the production of a range of tools and assets to drive the next phase of the identity strategy over the coming year. This includes: the finalisation of the identity story library, the final look and feel, a redeveloped website and digital tools and an Identity Guide Book designed to assist partners in utilising the identity. It is our intention to have the first elements of this in the market by November. Part of the additional investment requested from Council will go to assist in accelerating the impact of the production of the Identity tools and assets.



**8.3 CAPITAL CARRYOVERS 2016/17 TO 2017/18****Decision Required**

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Matthew McGlinchey, Senior Management Accountant
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-18

**1 Summary**

- 1.1 The process of carrying forward budgets is the mechanism Council uses to transfer funding across financial years.
- 1.2 Council approval is sought to carry forward capital budgets into the 2017/2018 financial year to the value of \$15.049m. This brings the total capital forecast for 2017/18 to \$64.4m. Expenditure was approved for the works proposed to be carried over as part of the previous year's budgets.
- 1.3 The primary reason that budgets are being requested to be carried over is that this work was committed in the 2016/2017 financial year but payment will not occur until the 2017/2018 year. In some instance the work reflects the wishes of Community Boards.
- 1.4 Some capital projects are funded from operating income (rates) with the unspent funding included in the current activity operating surplus. When these projects proceed the funding will come from the existing activity balances.
- 1.5 The overall financial impact of a revised capital programme will be reflected in the September Quarterly Financial reforecast that Council will consider in November.
- 1.6 The approval of the capital carryovers will not result in external debt levels exceeding those forecast in the Annual Plan 2017/2018.

**2 Draft Resolution****That the Full Council**

- 1. receives the Capital Carryovers 2016/17 to 2017/18 report RCN17-09-18; and**
- 2. approves carrying the proposed budget carryovers totalling \$15.049m listed in Attachment 1 into the 2017/2018 financial year.**

### 3 Purpose of the Report

- 3.1 This report requests Council approve capital projects to be carried over from the 2016/2017 financial year to the 2017/2018 financial year. This will ensure appropriate expenditure approval is held for the 2017/18 financial year.

### 4 Background and Discussion

- 4.1 Each year, as part of the Annual Plan or Long Term Plan process, the Council approves funding for maintenance and operations along with capital projects. Funding of capital and renewal projects is provided from a mixture of general and targeted rates, external sources (e.g. NZTA), loans, development contributions and reserve financial contributions.
- 4.2 The approval of the expenditure in the capital works programme is required prior to Council officers committing to a project and entering into legal and contractual arrangements.
- 4.3 The annual capital carryover report is the mechanism that is used to recognise that some payments will occur in the new budget year but will not have been included in that year's budget. There will be projects approved in the current year capital works budget where the financial cost will also fall into the next financial year. For this reason there is always a budget movement across years.
- 4.4 In addition to projects that have legal and contractual commitments at financial year-end, there are a smaller number of projects that were not started and are proposed to be carried forward into the current financial year. The approval for these carry forwards is also sought through this report. The key question around these projects is whether they can be completed within the current year in addition to the programmed capital works.
- 4.5 As is normal, a number of capital projects were unable to be completed and billed by 30 June 2017. This was mostly due to weather events, staff resources and processes around land and consenting issues. This has had no effect on immediate levels of service but we need to carry out some of the work that was not done and complete work already committed to.
- 4.6 While the physical works and construction have continued, approval of budget carryovers are required to ensure funding arrangements are in place for these projects that have crossed over the 2016/17 financial year.
- 4.7 Attachment 1 provides a list of projects proposed to be carried over, along with the reason the carryover is required. The projects are listed and subtotalled by activity area.

### 5 Options

- 5.1 **Option 1** – Do not approve the carryover of funding.  
Committed project works would need to be stopped. This could expose the Council to penalties being owed to the contractors for stopping the work. Works presently being undertaken would still need to be made safe. If the carryover budgets are not approved the work undertaken since 1 July 2017 would need to be funded from the 2017/2018 budgets.
- 5.2 **Option 2** – Approve the carryover of funding.

The carryover of capital budgets to complete committed works has been a common practice of Council over many years. It will allow works to continue and for present budgets to be retained. Targeted and general rates are not affected by the carryover of funding.

## **6 Strategy and Risks**

- 6.1 Some of the funding proposed for carryover is part-funding for multi-year projects. If the funding is not carried over, there will be insufficient funding to complete these projects.
- 6.2 There is financial and reputational risk should the agreed capital works programme, that has been commenced, be curtailed unexpectedly.
- 6.3 Much of the work being carried over is an implicit part of the overall infrastructure strategy and other Council strategies. A failure to provide appropriate support for the capital programme may compromise those strategies.
- 6.4 The capital programme for 2017/18, including carry overs is \$64m.

## **7 Policy / Legal Requirements / Plan**

- 7.1 In some instances the Council has engaged contractors to undertake the project construction works. Funding of these projects was approved in the Annual Plan 2016/2017. The intention of the carryover funding is to allow works to continue and for the Council to meet its legal obligations under various physical works contracts.
- 7.2 There are no policy or legal matters that require further consideration.
- 7.3 Inclusion of an item in the Long Term Plan does not commit Council to completing the programme of work.

## **8 Consideration of Financial or Budgetary Implications**

- 8.1 With committed projects from 2016/2017 year underway, the carryover of funding is necessary to prevent an impact on the current year's budgets and a reduction in the current work programmes.
- 8.2 The proposed carryover from the 2016/2017 approved budget is \$15.049m. This amount is slightly larger than the normal, or average, annual carryover approved in recent years. All of the carryovers are either funded by loans, development contributions and/or operating income including NZTA.
- 8.3 The total capital forecast for the 2017/18 once this paper is approved will be \$64.4m.
- 8.4 The proposed \$15.049m of capital carryovers is funded as follows:
  - Internal loans/development contributions/other \$12.414m
  - Opening operational surplus (Activity Balances) \$2.635m
- 8.5 The budgeted amounts being carried forward have been advised to the Corporate Services, Finance section. In some instances the carryover budget is an amalgamation of smaller capital projects into one larger amount.

- 8.6 The Annual Report 2017 reports year-end external debt at \$122m. The budgeted opening debt figure for the Annual Plan 2017/2018 was \$166.4m. The \$44.4m variance is made up primarily of the operating surplus from the 2016/17 year, additional income and the under-spent capital works programme. The approval of the capital carryovers will increase the external debt position, but this will still remain below the estimate included in the Long Term Plan and in the Annual Plan.

## 9 Significance and Engagement

- 9.1 The level of significance around funding carryovers is considered to be low, in terms of Council's Significance and Engagement Policy. This is due to the projects already being approved in previous budgets. No additional funding is required. The decision to continue funding the projects will support agreed levels of service and does not impact on any strategic assets.
- 9.2 This report is a routine decision. The impact and prioritisation of the full 2017/2018 capital work plans (after allowing for the impact of carryovers) will occur as part of the quarterly financial report and re-forecast of the year end position.

## 10 Conclusion

- 10.1 The budget capital carryovers are a routine decision that is needed to continue to keep assets and services at the current levels. While the decision will increase current debt levels they will remain below those forecast in both the Long Term Plan and the Annual Plan.

## 11 Next Steps / Timeline

- 11.1 Approved capital carryover budget items will be loaded into the Council financial system with budget managers accountable for and reporting against this revised budget.
- 11.2 As part of the September year end re-forecast activity managers will forecast the financial impacts of their capital works programmes including carried over capital works.

## 12 Attachments

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| 1. List of Carryovers 2016-17 to 2017-18 | 49 |
|--|----|



## Tasman District Council Capital Carry Overs 2016/17 to 2017/18

Description	GL Code	Actual Expenditure \$	Approved budget (incl. previous carryovers) \$	Committed Works \$	Work to be initiated \$	Carry over to 2017/18 Budget \$	Reason for Carry Over	Expected Completion Date
<b>Environmental Information</b>								
O'Connor's Deep Bore	02166106	30,000	88,000	88,000	-	58,000	This is for the drilling of the O'Connors deep bore and setting up the monitoring equipment. the bore is to act as a sentenal bore for the deep Moutere aquifer where it runs under the Redwood zone. The drilling and testing project is now complete and is ready to be paid. The monitoring equipment is also covered within this carry over.	Oct-17
Richmond Air Quality Mmonitoring	02006101	-	35,000	55,000	55,000	20,000	The present monitoring unit is no longer able to be repaired and is required via an National Environmental Standard (NES-AQ) to run uninterrupted. We have a capital item in the budget to replace the existing unit with its modern equivalent. The present NES-AQ is under review and is now likely to also include additional monitoring requirements. In order to accomodate this and not be left with an inadequate machine we need to get one with the capability to cover monitoring both PM10 and PM2.5. This is more expensive than budgetted and is subject to exchange rate fluctuation.	Dec-17
Ground water monitoring site upgrades	02136103	75,000	90,000	90,000	15,000	15,000	The budgetted ground water monitoring site upgrade programme was delayed due to a requirement to initiate additional sites developed on the Wairoa, Lee and Roding Rivers. The programme is therefore behind schedule, but will be completed this financial year.	Jun-18
Wairoa at Irvines hydrometric site	02196106	45,000	50,000	57,000	12,000	12,000	Close out the old site including last lease payment and removal of the existing stilling tower.	May-18
<b>Total Environmental Information</b>						<b>105,000</b>		
<b>Rivers and Flood Control</b>								
Rivers Capital Works X	3310620806	33,434	441,121	250,000		250,000	Motueka Stopbank enhancement, designed, ready to be tendered	Feb-18
<b>Total Rivers and Flood Control</b>						<b>250,000</b>		
<b>Solid Waste</b>								
Eves Valley Landfill Consenting	07016211007R	0	30,000		30,000	900	This consent will be funded by NTRLBU but this budget is required for Mariri contingency	
Eves Valley Landfill leachate improvements	07016211008	10,253	34,736	24,483	0	24,483	Improvements committed and due for completion in August	
Eves Valley Landfill planting	07016211004	17,169	96,894	16,500	63,225	27,831	Planting in June-July, further work programmed May-June	
Mariri Compactor and Pit Improvements	07036211013	428,990	1,210,400	781,410	0	781,410	The construction contract commenced in July 2017	
RRC Computers	07026107	-	10,424		10,424		These computers are due for replacement	
Takaka renewals	07116211018	40,079	57,370	-	17,291	17,291	Further drainage renewals is due this year	
<b>Total Solid Waste</b>						<b>862,339</b>		
<b>Stormwater</b>								
Richmond central improvements	06146216014	1,899,760	3,639,139	1,739,379		1,739,379	Works occuring.	
Pohara Main Settlement flood works	06316216001	46,199	876,892		830,693	830,693	Funding to do bunding and culvert upgrade works.	
Lower Queen Street Stormwater Pipework Upgrade	06146216003	190,919	1,809,617		987,086	987,086	Lower Queen St work still to be initiated.	
Borck Creek/Poutama Drain Widening 16/17	06146216046	18,830	70,000		51,170	51,170	For Borck Creek widening works	
Washbourn Gardens Stormwater Bypass	0601621637	183,262	270,000		86,738	86,738	Detailed design phase.	
Growth Allowance for Stormwater Infrastructure	0601621627	25,707	88,607		62,900	62,900	As required for contributions to development works.	
Secondary Flow Management Initiatives	0601621633		5,953		155,394	149,441	Dev. Cont. towards Arizona 2/9ths drain widening and extended pipe network.	Dec-17
Ned's Creek Flood Prevention Works Stage 2	0601621629	7,446	10,424		17,871	17,871	Initial modelling and possible drain widening work.	
Stormwater Modelling	06146216048	214,423	813,187		100,000	100,000	Secondary flowpath modelling and field verification.	
<b>Total Stormwater</b>						<b>4,025,277</b>		
<b>Wastewater</b>								
Richmond Central Improvements - Queen St	09226200008					21,229	Need extra funds	
Headingly Lane Wastewater Main	09206200028R					442,250	Council Resolution 13 April 17. CF needed	
Lower Queen St Water and Sewer Pipelines	09226200015R					1,092	CF needed	
Safety Improvements	09016200001	54,528	95,427	6,702	17,967	40,899	This is actually what didn't get spent in 16/17. It is lower than what Matt has (\$40,899) due to Confirm/MagiQ issues.	
New Telemetry	09226200020	272,341	319,909	62,061	-14,493	47,568	Over spend, carry remainder forward, note this is more than Matt has estimated	
45 Trewavas St PS New Storage	09206200047					62,605	Design complete, need extra \$140k	
Rehabilitation of Wetwells	09226200021					152,728	Design started	
Mechanical & Electrical Renewals at Pump Stations & WWTPs	09016216	345,857	478,996	17,612	115,527	133,139		
<b>Total Wastewater</b>						<b>901,510</b>		
<b>Water Supply</b>								
Re-zoning - Talbot St	08016215081I	0	71,012		71,012	71,012	Part of wider renewals work	
District Bulk Meter Renewal Programme	0801621578	46,941	66,716		19,775	19,775	Ongoing programme of renewals	
Backflow Prevention Programme	08016215087	10,870	98,090	87,220		87,220	Ongoing programme of renewals	
Occupational Health & Safety	0801621579	26,231	40,000	13,769		13,769	Needed to complete works	







**8.4 REGIONAL PEST MANAGEMENT PROPOSED PLAN****Decision Required**

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Paul Sheldon, Coordinator – Biosecurity and Biodiversity (Tasman District Council)
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-19

**1 Summary**

- 1.1 Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council have operated a joint Regional Pest Management Strategy and an Operational Plan since the introduction of the 1993 Biosecurity Act.
- 1.2 As the current Strategy expires in November 2017 and the Biosecurity Act requirements have changed since it was prepared, both Nelson City Council and Tasman District Council resolved to prepare a new Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP) and have established a Regional Pest Management Joint Committee (the Joint Committee) (in May 2016) to oversee this process.
- 1.3 The Joint Committee has met five times. At its last meeting (August 29<sup>th</sup>) it resolved to recommend the draft Plan Proposal to Tasman District and Nelson City Councils for public notification and call for submissions.
- 1.4 Significant consultation with key stakeholder groups has already occurred during the drafting process including pre consultation with key stakeholders and circulating early drafts of the Plan Proposal to key stakeholders for comment.
- 1.5 This report seeks agreement to publically notify the draft Plan Proposal for full public submissions.

**2 Draft Resolution**

That the Full Council

1. receives the Tasman Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan Report RCN17-09-19 and Proposal; and
2. *notes that the meeting of the joint Regional Pest Management Committee, held on 29 August 2017, approved the Tasman Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal for recommendation to Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council to publicly notify for submissions; and*
3. approves it for public notification and request for submissions as a Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal prepared under Section 70(1(a)) of the Biosecurity Act 1993; and
4. authorises the Regional Pest Management Committee Chair and Deputy Chair to approve any final amendments arising from this Council meeting or Ministry for Primary Industries audit prior to its public notification.

**3 Purpose of the Report**

- 3.1 To seek authorisation from Tasman District Council to notify the Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal 2017-2027 prepared under Section 70(1(a)) of the Biosecurity Act 1993 and to call for public submissions (Attachment 2).
- 3.2 It is anticipated notification would occur during October 2017 and submissions would close by December 15<sup>th</sup> 2017.

**4 Background and Discussion**

- 4.1 The Biosecurity Act 1993 was substantially amended in 2012 and additional requirements introduced through the National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015.
- 4.2 The legislative changes and new requirement have meant that Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council resolved to prepare a new Regional Pest Management Plan under the new provisions.
- 4.3 A Regional Pest Management Joint Committee comprising three Councilors from each council was established with delegations to oversee preparation of the draft Plan Proposal and to recommend it to each council.
- 4.4 The Joint Committee has met five times.
  - 4.4.1 At its initial meeting (June 2016) the Joint Committee approved a targeted pre consultation process.
  - 4.4.2 At its next meeting (September 2016) it approved drafting principles to guide preparation of the new Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal 2017-2027 (draft Plan Proposal).
  - 4.4.3 At its third meeting (April 2017) it approved completion of the draft Plan Proposal and targeted consultation with the draft. It also requested additional supporting information on the management of pest species within significant natural areas.
  - 4.4.4 At its fourth meeting (August 2<sup>nd</sup> 2017) it considered the content of the draft Plan Proposal and requested additional advice on management of pest species which fell outside the draft Plan Proposal (see Attachment 1).
  - 4.4.5 At its last meeting (August 29<sup>th</sup> 2017) it resolved to recommend the draft Plan Proposal to Tasman District and Nelson City Councils for public notification and request for public submissions (see Attachment 2).
- 4.5 It is proposed that notification would occur during October 2017 and Submissions will be received up until December 15<sup>th</sup> 2017. Following this the Regional Pest Management Joint Committee will reconvene to consider the submissions received, the decisions to be issued and the changes (if any) to be made to the Plan Proposal.
- 4.6 The Regional Pest Management Joint Committee will then recommend these decisions and any associated changes to the Plan Proposal to the two Council for ratification.

**5 Options**

- 5.1 Approve the draft Plan Proposal for public notification and request for submissions.
- 5.1.1 This will allow public scrutiny of the document and satisfaction (in part) of the consultation requirements of Section 72 of the Biosecurity Act 1993.
- 5.1.2 Following close of submissions consideration can then be given to the submissions received and if the Council agrees with the submissions made it can accept them in whole or in part and change the Plan Proposal accordingly.
- 5.1.3 Notification of the Plan Proposal before November 2017 will allow the existing Regional Pest Management Strategy to continue in force until the Plan Proposal replaces it.
- 5.1.4 The risk is that submitters could seek substantial changes to the Plan Proposal which will take time to work through.
- 5.2 Do not approve the draft Plan Proposal for public notification and send it back to the Regional Pest Management Joint Committee for significant changes.
- 5.2.1 Provides for Council to make substantial changes before Plan Proposal is notified.
- 5.2.2 Provides for large issues such as wilding conifer management to be worked through at a national level.
- 5.2.3 Delay will make it unlikely that the Plan Proposal will be notified before the currently Regional Pest Management Strategy expires (November 2017). While there are a range of legal opinions regarding the implications of a failure to notify a Plan Proposal before an existing Strategy expires, there is a risk that the Council will not have access to the powers of the Biosecurity Act until a new Plan is in place.
- 5.2.4 Large issues such as wilding conifer management may take several years to resolve.

**6 Strategy and Risks**

- 6.1 As in 5 above.

**7 Policy / Legal Requirements / Plan**

- 7.1 The Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal 2017-2027 replaces the existing Tasman – Nelson Regional Pest Management Strategy. It must be prepared and adopted as prescribed by the provisions of the Biosecurity Act 1993 and it's associated National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015. These requirements have been followed.

**8 Consideration of Financial or Budgetary Implications**

- 8.1 The Plan Proposal is largely budget neutral as it will cost a similar amount to the Strategy it replaces.

**9 Significance and Engagement**



1 Issue	2 Level of Significance	3 Explanation of Assessment
4 Is there a high level of public interest, or is decision likely to be controversial?	Low	Interest is largely restricted to industry groups and conservation groups
5 Is there a significant impact arising from duration of the effects from the decision?	Low	The proposal seeks to carry forward existing activity and commitments
6 Does the decision relate to a strategic asset? (refer Significance and Engagement Policy for list of strategic assets)	Low	No
7 Does the decision create a substantial change in the level of service provided by Council?	Low	The proposal seeks to carry forward the existing levels of activity largely unchanged
8 Does the proposal, activity or decision substantially affect debt, rates or Council finances in any one year or more of the LTP?	Low	No but it is likely that some pest management activity will fall outside the Biosecurity Act requirements. These programmes were previously funded under the existing Regional pest Management Strategy and can be carried forward as non statutory programmes with the same level of service using the existing committed funding
9 Does the decision involve the sale of a substantial proportion or controlling interest in a CCO or CCTO?	Low	No
10 Does the proposal or decision involve entry into a private sector partnership or contract to carry out the deliver on any Council group of activities?	Low	No
11 Does the proposal or decision involve Council	Low	No

1 Issue	2 Level of Significance	3 Explanation of Assessment
exiting from or entering into a group of activities?		

## 10 Conclusion

10.1 Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council have resolved to prepare a Regional Pest Management Plan to replace the current Regional Pest Management Strategy which expires in November 2017. The Regional Pest Management Joint Council Committee has been established to oversee this process. Consultation has been undertaken with key stakeholders and the draft Plan Proposal has been amended to reflect that feedback. The Regional Pest Management Joint Council Committee have resolved to recommend the draft Plan Proposal to Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council for public notification and call for submissions. This report seeks Council approval to proceed with that public notification and call for submissions.

## 11 Next Steps / Timeline

### 11.1 September 2017

Tasman and Nelson councils receive Regional Pest Management Joint Council Committee recommendation and consider notification of Plan Proposal for public submissions.

### 11.2 Mid October 2017 (if approved)

Public notification of Plan Proposal for submission's closing by December 15<sup>th</sup> 2017.

### 11.3 Late October – Early December 2017

Public meetings in Tasman and Nelson

Stakeholder workshops to assist understanding of Plan Proposal.

### 11.4 Jan- Feb 2018

Assessment of submissions, preparation of officers reports and recommendations

### 11.5 March – April 2018

Meeting of the Regional Pest Management Joint Council Committee to

Hear submitters (if requested), and

Consider staff recommendations, and

Recommend decisions on submissions, and

Recommend changes to the Plan Proposal

### 11.6 May 2018

Regional Pest Management Joint Committee recommends decisions on submissions and Plan Proposal changes to full Councils

11.7 June 2018

Issue of decisions, making of the Plan and receipt of any appeals

<b>12 Attachments</b>
-----------------------

- |    |   |     |
|----|---|-----|
| 1. | Proposed Nelson Tasman Regional Pest Management Plan                | 61  |
| 2. | Management of Pest Species Outside of Regional Pest Management Plan | 189 |



**Attachment 2**

**Proposed Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest  
Management Plan 2017 - 2027**

**@@ October 2017**

## Foreword

Introduced pest animals and pest plants pose major challenges for land occupiers who are producing crops or managing farms and forests. These pests also impact on our natural ecosystems, destroying the habitat of native birds, animals and insects. We are fortunate in this region to have many committed groups involved in managing environmental pests. These range from the smaller community groups working along waterways and estuary margins to those involved with innovative projects such as the Brook Sanctuary and Project Mohua, the work undertaken by the Department of Conservation staff and their contractors on public land, and groups such as Friends of Flora, Friends of Rotoiti and Friends of Cobb. It has been inspiring to see the involvement of philanthropists in funding pest control on high value sites within national parks. This Plan is designed to support the work of these individuals, organisations, groups and agencies.

This is the first Proposed Pest Management Plan for the Tasman-Nelson Region prepared under the revised Biosecurity Act 2012. It builds on the good progress made under previous Pest Management Strategies in controlling a wide range of pests to support productive land uses and provide environmental benefits from healthy native ecosystems. It is also unique in that it is the only Regional Pest Management Plan that involves two councils working together to provide a better outcome.

It has been challenging to select the pests to be included in this Plan. The focus has been on high-risk pests that are in the early stages of infestation as these make best use of the Councils' limited resources. Widespread pests such as gorse and broom are only included in areas where there are few plants and there is a strong community commitment to keep on top of them, such as in the St Arnaud - Howard area.

In most situations, the occupier is responsible for managing pests on their property. One of the changes in this Plan is that Council staff will formally take responsibility for controlling two categories of pests (Exclusion Pests and Eradication Pests) as this is the most efficient way to deal with them.

This Proposed Plan is intended to provide information and direction to those with an interest in pest management. We encourage you to make a submission if there are things that you support, things that you don't support, or things that should (or should not) be included.



Stuart Bryant  
Chair  
Regional Pest Management  
Joint Council Committee



Brian McGurk  
Deputy Chair  
Regional Pest Management  
Joint Council Committee

# Table of Contents

## Part One – Plan Establishment

- 1 Introduction
  - 1.1 Proposer
  - 1.2 Purpose
  - 1.3 Coverage
  - 1.4 Duration
  
- 2 Background
  - 2.1 Strategic context
    - 2.1.1 Biosecurity framework for the Councils
    - 2.1.2 Biosecurity framework outside Council
  
  - 2.2 Legislative framework
    - 2.2.1 Biosecurity Act
    - 2.2.2 Resource Management Act
    - 2.2.3 Local Government Act
    - 2.2.4 Wild Animal Control Act and Wildlife Act
    - 2.2.5 Other legislation
  
  - 2.3 Regional Leadership
  - 2.4 Relationship with other pest management plans
  - 2.5 Relationship with the National Policy Direction
  - 2.6 Relationship with Maori
  - 2.7 Consultation overview
  
- 3 Responsibilities and obligations
  - 3.1 The Management Agency
  - 3.2 Compensation and disposal of receipts
  - 3.3 Affected parties
    - 3.3.1 Responsibilities of occupiers
    - 3.3.2 Crown agencies
    - 3.3.3 Territorial local authorities
    - 3.3.4 Occupiers of road reserves

## Part Two – Pest Management

- 4 Organisms declared as pests
  
- 5 Pest management framework
  - 5.1 Objectives
  - 5.2 Pest management programmes
  - 5.3 Principal measures to manage pests
  - 5.4 Rules

## 6 Programme and pest descriptions

- 6.1 Exclusion Programme
- 6.2 Eradication Programme
- 6.3 Progressive Containment Programme
- 6.4 Sustained Control Programme
- 6.5 Site-led Programme

## 7 Monitoring

- 7.1 Measuring what the objectives are achieving
- 7.2 Measuring the Management Agency's performance
- 7.3 Monitoring plan effectiveness

**Part Three – Procedures**

## 8 Powers conferred

- 8.1 Powers under Part 6 of the Act
- 8.2 Powers under other sections of the Act
- 8.3 Power to issue exemptions to Plan Rules

## 9 Funding

- 9.1 Introduction
- 9.2 Analysis of benefits and costs
- 9.3 Beneficiaries and exacerbators
- 9.4 Funding sources and reasons for funding
- 9.5 Anticipated costs of implementing the Plan

**List of Tables**

- Table 1: National Policy Direction Requirements
- Table 2: Organisms classified as pests
- Table 3: Exclusion pests for the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 4: Eradication pests in the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 5: Eradication pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 6: Progressive Containment pests in the Pest in the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 7: Progressive Containment pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 8: Sustained Control pests in the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 9: Sustained Control pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson region
- Table 10: Sustained Control pests in the Tasman-Nelson region subject to Boundary Rules
- Table 11: Sustained Control pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson region subject to Boundary Rules
- Table 12: Sites in the Site-led programme
- Table 13: Pests in the Site-led programme



Table 14: Measuring objectives

Table 15: Powers from Part 6 of the Biosecurity Act to be used

Table 16: Beneficiaries and exacerbators

Table 17: Proposed RPMP Expenditure for 2017-18

Table 18: To determine the level of cost-benefit analysis for individual pests

## **Glossary**

## **References**

## **Appendices**

Appendix 1. Maps

Appendix 2. Beneficiaries and Exarcebators

Appendix 3. Application of NPD criteria to PRPMP pests

Appendix 4. Summary of Benefits and Costs

Appendix 5. Organisms of Interest



## Part One – Plan Establishment

### 1 Introduction

#### 1.1 Proposer

Tasman District and Nelson City Councils have leadership roles under the Biosecurity Act 1993 (the Act) and intend to establish a regional pest management plan (RPMP) for the Tasman-Nelson region. The first formal step is the notification of the Proposed Regional Pest Management Plan for the period 2017- 2027. It builds on previous Tasman-Nelson regional Pest Management Strategies. Throughout this document, it will be referred to as the **Proposed Plan**.

#### 1.2 Purpose

The purpose of the Proposed Plan is to provide a framework for efficient and effective management or eradication of specified organisms in the Tasman-Nelson region to:

- (a) minimise the actual or potential adverse or unintended effects associated with those organisms; and
- (b) maximise the effectiveness of individual pest management action through a regionally co-ordinated approach.

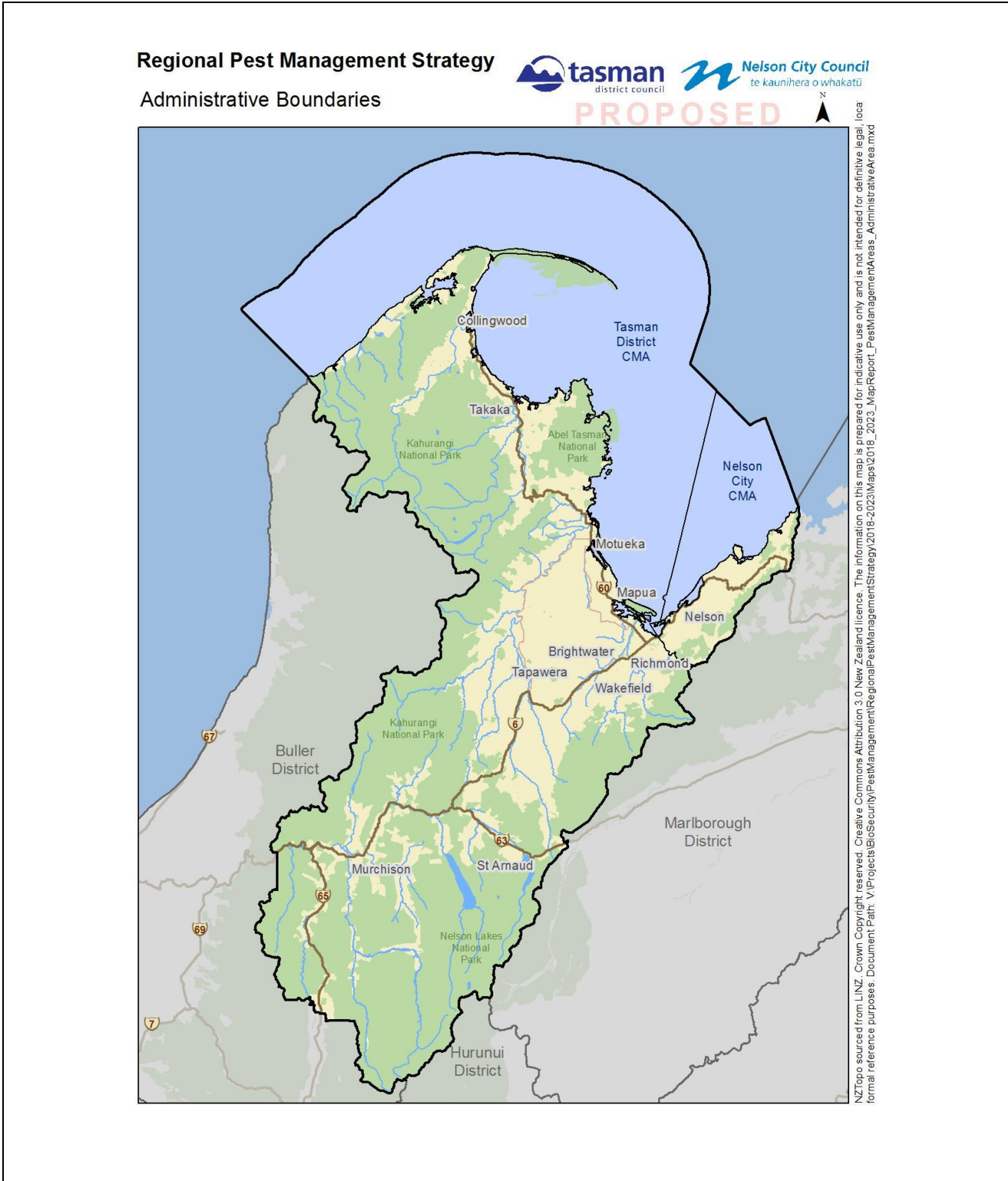
There are many organisms in the Tasman-Nelson region that can be considered undesirable or a nuisance. However, it is only when individual action or inaction in managing pests imposes undue effects upon others that regional management is warranted. The Biosecurity Act 1993 (the Act) contains prerequisite criteria that must be met to justify such intervention. This Proposed Plan identifies the organisms to be classified as pests and managed on a regional basis.

Once operative, the Regional Pest Management Plan (Proposed Plan) will allow the two Councils to exercise the relevant advisory, service delivery, regulatory and funding provisions available under the Act to deliver the specific objectives identified in Part Two: Pest Management.

Written submissions from the public will be sought on its contents and decisions on those submissions will be made by the Councils. Those decisions can be appealed to the Environment Court. Once the Proposed Plan becomes operative as the Regional Pest Management Plan, it will empower the Councils to exercise the relevant advisory, service delivery, regulatory and funding provisions available under the Act to deliver the objectives in Part Two of the Plan.

**1.3 Coverage**

The Proposed Plan will operate within the administrative boundaries of the Tasman-Nelson region and covers an area of 15,222 sq. km (land) and 5513 sq. km (sea) within Tasman District (14,800 sq. km of land and 5165 sq. km of sea) and Nelson City (422 sq. km of land and 348 sq. km of sea). These boundaries are shown in Figure 1.



**Figure 1. Administrative boundaries of the Tasman-Nelson Region**

## **1.4 Duration**

It is proposed that the Plan remains in force for a period of 10 years and this will take effect on the date that it is made operative in accordance with Section 77 of the Act. It may cease at an earlier date in the unlikely event that the Councils declare by public notice that the Proposed Plan has achieved its purpose or it is revoked following a review.

## 2 Background

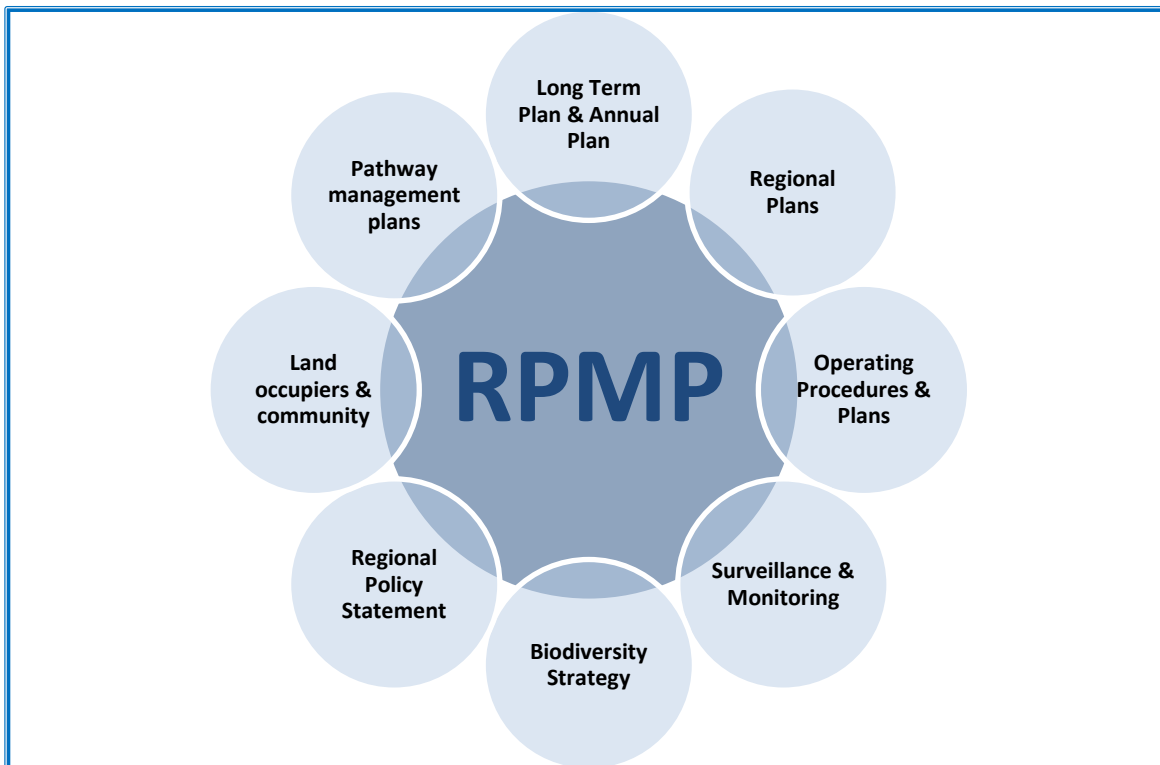
### 2.1 Strategic Context

Pest management influences, and is influenced by, the way land and water is used and managed. Other planning or operational activities may have some capacity for regional pest management but the function of regional pest management plans and the underpinning legislation provide the most efficient means of reducing or preventing pest impacts on a region’s economic, environmental, social and cultural values. All regional authorities operate regional pest management plans.

There are several planning and operational activities that contribute to reducing the impact from pests on the region’s economic, environmental, social and cultural values and these activities occur within the Councils and externally.

#### 2.1.1 Biosecurity framework for the Councils

Regional pest management sits within a biosecurity framework for the Tasman-Nelson region and is underpinned by a number of supporting actions. Land occupiers and the wider community, whether as beneficiaries, exacerbators, or both, are a fundamental part of the framework, as shown in Figure 2.

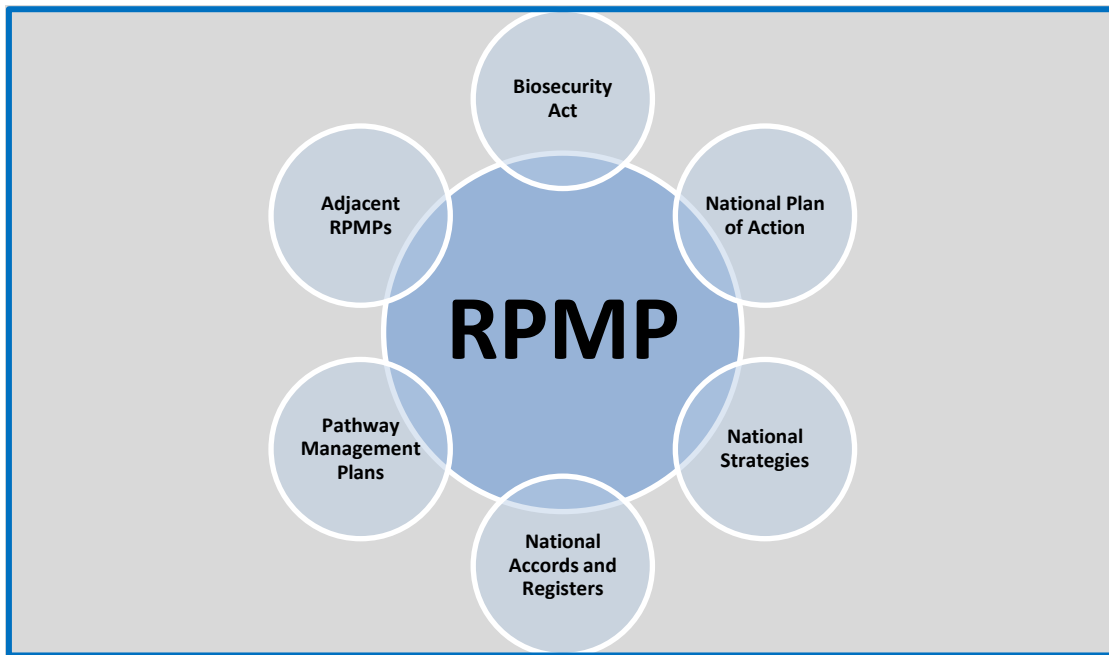


**Figure 2: Strategic Relationships for Regional Pest Management**

**2.1.2 Biosecurity framework outside Council**

An effective biosecurity framework must work within the region and at the national level. Neighbouring regional pest plans and pathway management plans and national legislation, policies and initiatives, will all influence the Plan. Consequently, the Plan is an integral part of a secure biosecurity framework to protect New Zealand’s environmental, economic, social and cultural values from pest threats.

Regional pest management sits within a biosecurity framework for the Tasman-Nelson region and is underpinned by a number of relevant legislation and supportive plans. Land occupiers and the wider community are a fundamental part of this framework, whether as beneficiaries or exacerbators or both, as shown in Figure 3.



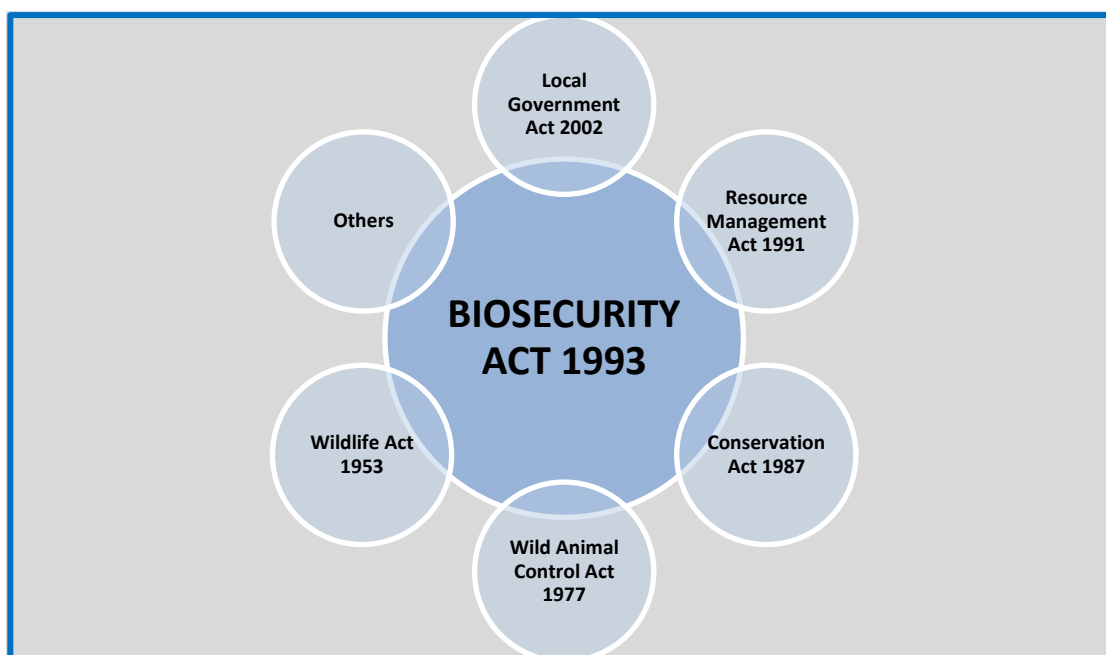
**Figure 3: External Biosecurity Instruments**

**2.2 Legislative Framework**

Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council are two of the six unitary authorities in New Zealand that have both regional and district council responsibilities. They manage air, soil, water and the coastal environment as well as rural and urban land use.

Regional councils in New Zealand have favoured the Biosecurity Act 1993 for pest management by preparing and operating their RPMPs but this is linked to other legislation (see Figure 4).

S



**Figure 4: Biosecurity Legislation**

### 2.2.1 Biosecurity Act 1993

The Councils can use the Biosecurity Act to exclude, eradicate or effectively manage pests in its region, including unwanted organisms. They are not legally obliged to manage a pest or other organism to be controlled, unless they choose to do so. As such, the Act's approach is enabling rather than prescriptive. It provides a framework to gather intervention methods into a coherent system of efficient and effective actions. However, the Act has criteria (see Section 1.1) that must be met to justify such intervention.

#### Part 2: Functions, powers and duties in a leadership role

The Councils are mandated under Part 2 (functions, powers and duties) of the Act to provide regional leadership for biosecurity activities, primarily within their jurisdictional areas.

Section 12B(1) sets out how the Councils can provide leadership. It includes ways that leadership in pest management issues can help to prevent, reduce or eliminate adverse effects from harmful organisms. Some of these activities include helping to develop and align RPMPs and regional pathway management plans in the region, promoting public support for managing pests, and helping those involved in managing pests to communicate and co-operate so as to make programmes more effective, efficient, and equitable.

Section 13(1) sets out powers that support regional councils in this leadership role. These are:

- (a) powers to establish (e.g. appoint a Management Agency for a plan; implement a small-scale management programme);
- (b) powers to research and prepare (e.g. gather information; keep records; prepare a proposal to activate the RPMP);
- (c) powers to enable (e.g. giving councils the power to monitor pests to be assessed, managed or eradicated); and



- (d) powers to review (e.g. not allow an operational plan; review, amend, revoke or replace a plan).

### Part 5: Managing pests and harmful organisms

Part 5 of the Act specifically covers pest management. Its primary purpose is to provide for harmful organisms to be managed effectively or eradicated. A harmful organism is assigned pest status if included in a pest management plan (also see the prerequisites in Sections 69-78 of the Act). Part 5 includes the need for ongoing monitoring to determine whether pests and unwanted organisms are present, and keeping them under surveillance. Part of this process is to develop effective and efficient measures (such as policies and plans) that prevent, reduce, or eliminate the adverse effects of pests and unwanted organisms on land and people (including Māori, their kaitiakitanga and taonga). Part 5 also addresses the issue of who should pay for the cost of pest management.

### Part 6: Administering an RPMP

Once operative, an RPMP is supported by parts of Part 6 (as nominated in the plan) that focus on the voluntary and mandatory actions of a regional council. For example, a regional council must assess any other proposal for an RPMP, must prepare an operational plan for any RPMP (if the Management Agency for it), and must prepare an annual report on the operational plan.

### Changes to the Act since 1993

The Act has undergone numerous amendments since 1993. The Biosecurity Law Reform Act 2012 introduced the most significant changes and these include:

- (a) **legislative** - being able to bind the Crown to stated Good Neighbour Rules within a pest management plan, or to rules within a pathway management plan;
- (b) **structural** - giving regional and unitary councils a regional leadership role in managing pests; adding pathway management to the suite of pest management programmes; linking programmes with stated intermediate outcomes and programme objectives; using consistent terms in pest management programmes;
- (c) **compliance-related** - setting out the extra requirements under the National Policy Direction that must be complied with; introducing greater transparency of risk assessment in the analysis of benefits and costs;
- (d) **procedural** - allowing funding, roles, and responsibilities related to small-scale management programmes to be delegated; allowing a partial review (including adding a pest or pathway management plan) to be done at any time;
- (e) **consultative** - increasing the flexibility in public consultation.

### 2.2.2 Resource Management Act 1991

The Councils also have responsibilities under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) to sustainably manage the natural and physical resources of the region, including the Coastal Marine Area (CMA). These responsibilities include sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources, safeguarding life-supporting capacity and protecting environmentally significant areas and habitats (Section 5(2) and 6(c)).

The RMA sets out the functions of regional and unitary councils in relation to the maintenance and enhancement of ecosystems in the CMA of the region (Section 30(1)(c)(iiiia)), the control of actual

or potential effects of use, development or protection of land (Section 30(1)(d)(v)), and the establishment, implementation and review of objectives, policies and methods for maintaining indigenous biological diversity (Section 30(1)(ga)).

The focus of the RMA is on managing adverse effects on the environment through regional policy statements, regional and district plans, and resource consents. The RMA, along with regional policies and plans can be used to manage activities so that they do not create a biosecurity risk or those risks are minimised. While the Biosecurity Act is the main regulatory tool for managing pests, there are complementary powers within the RMA that can be used to ensure the problem is not exacerbated by activities regulated under the RMA.

The Biosecurity Act cannot override any controls imposed under the RMA, e.g. bypassing resource consent requirements.

### 2.2.3 Local Government Act 2002

The purpose of the Local Government Act 2002 (LGA) is to provide “*a framework and powers for local authorities to decide which activities they undertake and the manner in which they will undertake them*”. The LGA currently underpins biosecurity activities through the collection of both general and targeted rates. Although planning and delivering pest management objectives could fall within powers and duties under the LGA, it is more efficient and transparent to use the biosecurity legislation. The Councils are mandated under Section 11(b) of the LGA to perform the funding function, and Section 11(b) provides for Council to perform duties under Acts other than the LGA.

### 2.2.4 Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (and Wild Animal Control Amendment Act 1997) and the Wildlife Act 1953

Activities in implementing this Plan must comply with other legislation. Two such Acts are the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (and Wild Animal Control Amendment Act 1997) and the Wildlife Act 1953. The most relevant requirements are:

- (a) The Wild Animal Control Act 1977 declares wild goats, wild deer, wild pigs, chamois and tahr as being wild animals. This Act controls the hunting and release of wild animals and regulates deer farming and the operation of safari parks. It also gives local authorities the power to destroy wild animals under operational plans that have the Minister of Conservation’s consent.
- (b) The Wildlife Act 1953 controls and protects wildlife not subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. It defines wildlife which are not protected (e.g. feral cattle, feral cats, feral dogs), which are game (e.g. mallard ducks, black swan), which are partially protected and which are injurious. It authorises the keeping and breeding of some species of unprotected wildlife that may be kept and bred in captivity, even if they are declared pests under a pest management plan (e.g. ferret, stoat, weasel, polecat). The Director-General of Conservation must approve any plans to control injurious birds (e.g. rooks).

### 2.2.5 Other legislation

Other legislation (such as the Reserves Act 1977 and the Conservation Act 1987) contains provisions that support pest management within a specific context. The role of regional councils under such legislation is limited to advocacy. As regional councils have clearly defined roles and powers under the Biosecurity Act, only taking on an advocacy role would be of little use.

## 2.3 Regional Leadership

The Councils will provide leadership within the region by:

- (a) facilitating the development and implementation of the Tasman-Nelson regional Pest Management Plan;
- (b) promoting alignment between pest management agencies within the region;
- (c) co-ordinating pest management programmes with adjoining regions;
- (d) promoting public support for pest management;
- (e) enhancing the effectiveness, efficiency and equity of pest management programmes;
- (f) working with occupiers to identify and control pests on their land;
- (g) providing information on identification and control of pests.

#### **2.4 Relationship with Other Pest Management Plans**

The Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP) must not be inconsistent with:

- (a) any national pest management plan or RPMP that is focused on the same organism; or
- (b) any regulation.

Efficient and effective pest management requires neighbouring councils to have pest management objectives that are not inconsistent with each other. Tasman District Council staff have worked with staff from Marlborough District Council, the West Coast Regional Council and Environment Canterbury to develop common approaches for the management of selected pests where this is appropriate and will continue to do so. They also work with the agencies responsible for the management of unwanted organisms (the Ministry for Primary Industries and the Department of Conservation) to ensure the Proposed Plan is not inconsistent with their objectives.

#### **2.5 Relationship with the National Policy Direction**

The National Policy Direction (NPD) became active on 17 September 2015. The stated purpose of the NPD is to ensure that activities under Part 5 of the Act (Pest Management) provide the best use of available resources for New Zealand's best interests and, when necessary, align with each other to contribute to the achievement of the purpose of Part 5.

The following table (Table 1) summarises the NPD requirements and the steps taken to comply with them.

**Table 1: National Policy Direction Requirements**

NPD Requirements	Steps Taken to Comply
Programme is described	Checked that the types of programmes in 5.2 of the Proposal comply with Clause 5 of the NPD.
Objectives are set	Checked that the contents of 5.1 of the Proposal comply with Clause 4 of the NPD.
Benefits and costs are analysed	Checked that the costs and benefits have been analysed in a manner that is consistent with the Directions in Clause 6 of the NPD. That analysis has been published as an attachment to this Proposed Plan.
Funding rationale is noted	Checked that the funding rationale described in Section 9 of the Proposal has been developed in line with Clause 7 of the NPD.
Good Neighbour Rules (GNRs) are described	Checked that the descriptions of GNRs are in line with Clause 8 of the NPD.

## 2.6 Relationship with Māori

One specific purpose of the RPMP under the Act is to provide for the protection of the relationship between Māori and their ancestral lands, waters, sites, wāhi tapu, and taonga, and to protect those aspects from the adverse effects of pests. Māori involvement in biosecurity is an important part of exercising kaitiakitanga. Māori also carry out significant pest management through their primary sector economic interests and as occupiers.

The Councils recognise and respect the Crown's responsibilities under the Tiriti o Waitangi (Treaty of Waitangi) and accept their own responsibility to foster participation by Māori in the Councils' decision-making processes.

The eight iwi in the Top of the South were invited to meet and discuss the adverse effects of pests during the preparation of this plan and a productive meeting was held with the representatives of two iwi. Further invitations were sent to the other six iwi offering to meet them but no formal response was received. Informal feedback indicated they would prefer to submit on the Proposed Plan at a later stage.

## 2.7 Consultation Overview

Consultation was undertaken with the 10 groups of key stakeholders during July and August 2016. These included groups with interests in conservation, farming, forestry, horticultural, freshwater and marine biosecurity. Informal consultation has also occurred with the adjoining councils.

Prior to the meetings, most stakeholders received a copy of briefing notes. At the meeting, they received a presentation that described the review process, the principal biosecurity agencies and

their responsibilities, the changes in the Biosecurity legislation and its implications, Tasman District Council's consultation requirements, the Review timetable, and the names of the members of the Joint Council Committee. At these meetings, they provided feedback on the legislative changes, the Review process, on pests and rules in the existing Strategy, and on pests to be considered for the new Plan.

Over the following months, there has been ongoing liaison with key stakeholders to seek feedback on a wide range of matters including allocation of pests to programmes and framing of rules. Their feedback has been helpful in developing this Proposal.

### **3 Responsibilities and Obligations**

#### **3.1 The Management Agency**

Tasman District Council is the Management Agency that will be responsible for implementing the RPMP. The Council is satisfied that it meets the requirements of Section 100 of the Act in that it:

- (a) is accountable to the Plan funders, including Crown agencies, through the requirements of the LGA 2002;
- (b) is acceptable to the funders and those persons subject to the RPMP's management provision because it implemented previous Regional Pest Management Strategies; and
- (c) has the capacity, competency and expertise to implement the proposed RPMP.

The manner in which the Management Agency will implement its management responsibilities is set out in Section 8 of the Proposed Plan.

The Management Agency will:

- (a) prepare an Operational Plan for its implementation within 3 months of this Plan becoming operative;
- (b) review the Operational Plan annually, and if necessary, amend it;
- (c) prepare a report on the Operational Plan and its implementation not later than 5 months after the end of each financial year; and
- (d) make copies of the Operational Plan and the report on its implementation available to the public.

#### **3.2 Compensation and Disposal of Receipts**

The Proposed Plan does not provide for compensation to be paid to any persons meeting their obligations under its implementation. However, should the disposal of a pest or associated organism provide any net proceeds, a person will be paid disbursement in the manner noted under Section 100I of the Act.

### 3.3 Affected Parties

#### 3.3.1 Responsibilities of occupiers

Pest management is an individual's responsibility in the first instance as occupiers generally contribute to the pest problem and in turn benefit from the control of pests. The term "occupier" has a wide definition under the Act and includes:

- (a) the person who physically occupies the place; and
- (b) the owner of the place; and
- (c) any agent, employee, or other person acting or apparently acting in the general management or control of the place.

Under the Act, the term "place" includes any building, conveyance, craft, land or structure and the bed and waters of the sea and any canal, lake, pond, river or stream.

Occupiers must manage pest populations at or below levels specified in the rules. If they fail to meet the requirements of the rules, they may face legal action. In some instances, owners and/or occupiers must report pests to the Management Agency. They must never sell, propagate, distribute or keep pests.

An occupier cannot stop an authorised person from entering a place, at any reasonable time, to:

- (a) find out whether pests are on the property;
- (b) manage pests; or
- (c) ensure the owner and/or occupier is complying with biosecurity law.

While the occupier may choose the method(s) to control pests, they must also comply with the requirements under other legislation (e.g. Resource Management Act and/or the Hazardous Substances & New Organisms Act 1996).

This Proposal treats all private land equitably and emphasises the responsibilities and obligations of all land occupiers, including Māori. Council acknowledges the complex and variable relationships of Māori land ownership and occupation, which includes multiple ownership, including lessees, and a range of corporate management systems under the Companies Act or Te Ture Whenua Act. Where owners and/or occupiers are unknown, the Māori Land Court; or the Registrar of Companies may help to identify and communicate with them.

Within the Tasman-Nelson region, there are an estimated 54,300 hectares of land under multiple ownership, mostly (95%) plantation forest. This is a substantial area that could provide significant benefits to the region if the Proposal is implemented; conversely, it could present risks if there are barriers to effective communication about the obligations and responsibilities of occupiers. Tasman District Council, as the Management Agent, is committed to working with local iwi.

#### 3.3.2 Crown agencies

It is proposed that all Crown agencies will be bound by the Good Neighbour Rules in this Proposed Plan. This will ensure that all land is treated equally and no occupier is inflicting unfair or unreasonable costs on others. Outside of the Good Neighbour Rules, the Councils will work closely with Crown agencies to deliver the objectives of this Plan.

### 3.3.3 Territorial local authorities

As unitary authorities, Tasman District and Nelson City Councils combine the functions of regional councils and territorial local authorities. This avoids potential difficulties from having separate regional and territorial bodies. Both councils have provided input into the Proposed Plan and will participate in the adoption and implementation of the final Plan. This has been achieved through the establishment of a Joint Council Committee and the participation of staff from both councils in consultation with key stakeholders and the preparation of the Proposed Plan.

### 3.3.4 Occupies of road reserves

Road reserves include the land on which the formed road lies and the verge area that extends to adjacent boundaries. The Act allows the option of making either roading authorities (New Zealand Transport Agency and district/city councils) or adjoining land occupiers responsible for pest management on road reserves (see Section 6(1) of the Act).

Accordingly, the two councils will continue to have the appropriate roading authority (New Zealand Transport Agency or the local council) responsible for pest management on road reserves. This will include rest areas, weigh pits, stockpile sites, legal road reserves adjacent to land free of pest plants or where the occupier is controlling pests in line with a Good Neighbour or Boundary Rule. Where these reserves are occupied by another party (e.g. as paper roads or for grazing purposes), the occupier will be responsible for pest control.



## Part Two – Pest Management

### 4 Organism Declarations

#### 4.1 Organisms Declared as Pests

The organisms listed in Table 2 are classified as pests. The table also indicates which management programme (or programmes) will apply and who is responsible for its management. All these pests are banned from sale, propagation or distribution under Sections 52 and 53 of the Biosecurity Act. Not complying with their requirements is an offence under the Act and may result in penalties (Section 157(1)). The table would normally show the pests that are covered by a Good Neighbour Rule but this has been removed from the Table as no pests are currently covered. Further information on Good Neighbour Rules is contained in Section 5.4.

Outside these programmes, the Department of Conservation undertakes control of animal pests (e.g. rats, weasels, stoats, possums) and plant pests (e.g. wilding conifers) which threaten conservation values on public conservation land. OSPRI (previously known as the Animal Health Board) plans and manages the TBfree programme to eliminate bovine tuberculosis from cattle, deer and wildlife. This is co-ordinated with the programmes on the conservation estate.

Central government agencies (usually the Ministry for Primary Industries, but sometimes the Department of Conservation) are responsible for the management of unwanted organisms or pests that are new to New Zealand that could pose a major threat to national economic or conservation values. The Councils also have the authority to initiate action against a pest that is considered to warrant regional intervention under Sections 100D or 100G of the Act.

There are statutory obligations that apply to any person under Sections 52 and 53 of the Biosecurity Act that prevent any person from selling, propagating, or distributing the pest or part of a pest that is covered by the Plan. Non-compliance, in whole or in part, with those sections is an offence under Section 154 O(1) of the Act and may result in penalties described in Section 157(1) of the Act.

**Table 2: Organisms Classified as Pests**

Common Name	Scientific Name	Programme	Good Neighbour Rules Apply?	Responsible Party if not Occupier
African feather grass	<i>Pennisetum macrourum</i>	Eradication		TDC
Banana passion vine (Golden Bay-Riwaka, Upper Buller)	<i>Passiflora tripartita</i> var. <i>mollissima</i> , <i>P. tarminiana</i>	Progressive containment		
Bathurst bur	<i>Xanthium spinosum</i>	Eradication		TDC
Blackberry	<i>Rubus fruticosus</i> agg.	Sustained control		
Black spot	<i>Venturia inaequalis</i>	Sustained control		
Bomarea	<i>Bomarea multiflora</i>	Progressive containment		
Boneseed (outside Port Hills)	<i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i>	Eradication		TDC
Boxthorn	<i>Lycium ferocissimum</i>	Eradication		TDC

Common Name	Scientific Name	Programme	Good Neighbour Rules Apply?	Responsible Party if not Occupier
Broom (Howard – St Arnaud)	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Sustained control		
Broom (outside Howard - St Arnaud)	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Sustained control		
Brushtail possum (Waimea Estuary)	<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Site-led		
Cathedral bells	<i>Cobaea scandens</i>	Eradication		TDC
Chilean needle grass	<i>Nassella neesiana</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Chinese pennisetum	<i>Cenchrus purpurascens (was Pennisetum alopecuriodes)</i>	Progressive containment		
Chocolate vine	<i>Akebia quinata</i>	Progressive containment		
Climbing asparagus (E. Golden Bay)	<i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Progressive containment		
Climbing spindleberry	<i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>	Eradication		TDC
Codling moth	<i>Cydia pomonella</i>	Sustained control		
Darwin's barberry (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Berberis darwinii</i>	Site-led		
Egeria	<i>Egeria densa</i>	Eradication		TDC
Entire Marshwort	<i>Nymphoides geminata</i>	Eradication		TDC
European Canker	<i>Neonectria ditissima</i>	Sustained control		
Feral cats (Waimea Estuary)	<i>Felis catus</i>	Site-led		
Feral rabbits (Golden Bay)	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Eradication		
Ferrets (Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela putorius furo</i>	Site-led		
Fireblight	<i>Erwinia amylovora</i>	Sustained control		
Gambusia	<i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Eradication		DOC
Giant buttercup	<i>Ranunculus acris</i>	Sustained control		
Gorse (Howard – St Arnaud)	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Sustained control		
Gorse (outside Howard - St Arnaud)	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Sustained control		
Greater bindweed (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Calystetia sylvatica</i>	Site-led		
Gunnera	<i>Gunnera tinctoria, G manicata</i>	Progressive containment		
Himalayan balsam	<i>Impatiens glandulifera</i>	Eradication		TDC
Holly (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Ilex aquifolium</i>	Site-led		
Hornwort	<i>Ceratophyllum demersum</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Indian myna	<i>Acridotheres tristis</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Indian ring-necked parakeet (feral)	<i>Psittacula krameri manillensis</i>	Eradication		TDC

Common Name	Scientific Name	Programme	Good Neighbour Rules Apply?	Responsible Party if not Occupier
Knotweeds (Asiatic, Giant and hybrids)	<i>Fallopia japonica, F. sachalinensis</i>	Progressive containment		
Koi carp	<i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	Exclusion		DOC
Lagarosiphon	<i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Sustained control		
Madeira vine	<i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Eradication		TDC
Nassella tussock (outside the Cape Soucis area)	<i>Nassella trichotoma</i>	Progressive containment		
Nassella tussock (Cape Soucis area)	<i>Nassella trichotoma</i>	Sustained control		
Nodding thistle	<i>Carduus nutans</i>	Sustained control		
Old man's beard (Golden Bay-Riwaka, Upper Buller)	<i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Progressive containment		
Perch	<i>Perca fluviatilis</i>	Eradication		DOC
Phragmites	<i>Phragmites australis</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Powdery mildew	<i>Podosphaera leucotricha</i>	Sustained control		
Purple loosestrife	<i>Lythrum salicaria</i>	Progressive containment		
Queensland poplar	<i>Homalanthus populifolius</i>	Progressive containment		
Ragwort	<i>Jacobaea vulgaris</i> (previously <i>Senecio jacobaea</i> )	Sustained control		
Red-eared slider turtles (feral)	<i>Trachemys scripta elegans</i>	Eradication		TDC
Reed sweet grass	<i>Glyceria maxima</i>	Progressive containment		
Rooks	<i>Corvus frugilegus</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Rowan (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Sorbus acuparia</i>	Site-led		
Rudd	<i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>	Eradication		DOC
Russell lupin (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Lupinus polyphyllus</i>	Site-led		
Sabella	<i>Sabella spallanzanii</i>	Sustained control		TDC
Saffron thistle	<i>Carthamus lanatus</i>	Eradication		TDC
Senegal tea	<i>Gymnocoronis spilanthoides</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Spartina	<i>Spartina spp.</i>	Eradication		DOC
Stoats (Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela ermine</i>	Site-led		
Sycamore (St Arnaud Village)	<i>Acer pseudoplatanus</i>	Site-led		
Taiwan cherry and cultivars (NE Nelson City)	<i>Prunus campanulata</i>	Site-led		NCC
Tench	<i>Tinca tinca</i>	Eradication		DOC
Variegated thistle	<i>Silybum marianum</i>	Progressive containment		
Velvet leaf	<i>Abutilon theophrasti</i>	Exclusion		TDC

Common Name	Scientific Name	Programme	Good Neighbour Rules Apply?	Responsible Party if not Occupier
Wallabies (Dama, Bennett's)	<i>Macropus eugenii</i> , <i>M. rufogriseus</i>	Exclusion		TDC
Weasels (Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela nivalis vulgaris</i>	Site-led		
White-edged nightshade	<i>Solanum marginatum</i>	Progressive containment		
Wild ginger (G Bay - Kaiteriteri)	<i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i> , <i>H. flavescens</i>	Progressive containment		
Wild kiwifruit (including unmanaged or abandoned)	<i>Actinidia spp.</i>	Eradication		
Wilding conifers <i>Note: Further work is required with stakeholders to seek consensus on species and locations of programmes</i>	<i>Pinus contorta</i> , <i>P. mugo</i> , <i>P. muricata</i> , <i>P. nigra</i> , <i>P. pinaster</i> , <i>P. ponderosa</i> , <i>P. radiata</i> , <i>P. sylvestris</i> , <i>P. uncinata</i> , <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> , <i>Larix decidua</i>	Site-led		
Woolly nightshade (G Bay)	<i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Progressive containment		
Yellow bristle grass (Golden Bay and Upper Buller)	<i>Setaria pumila</i>	Sustained control		
Yellow flag	<i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Progressive containment		
Yellow jasmine	<i>Jasminum humile</i>	Progressive containment		

## 4.2 Other Organisms That May be Controlled

The organisms specified as pests in the Proposed Plan are those that are capable of causing adverse effects on economic well-being, the environment, human health, enjoyment of the natural environment, and the relationship between Maori, their culture, and their traditions and their ancestral lands, waters, sites, wāhi tapu and taonga.

Section 70(2)(d) of the Act also provides for the specification of any other organisms intended to be controlled but not accorded pest status. There are many organisms that are capable of causing some adverse effects, particularly to biodiversity values, and a number are considered to pose a future risk that is sufficient to include their listing for ongoing surveillance or future control opportunities. These have been placed in a category titled Organisms of Interest in Appendix 5. They are not accorded pest status as they failed to meet the criteria outlined in the National Policy Direction for Pest Management. However, some are likely to be controlled on high-value sites where occupiers or community groups wish to do so.

## 4.3 Unwanted Organisms

A number of species have been declared nationally as Unwanted Organisms. This means they are prohibited from sale, propagation and distribution in accordance with Sections 52 and 53 of the

Biosecurity Act. Where this is considered sufficient for their management, they are not designated as pests in this Proposed Plan. The MPI website contains a database that can be searched to determine if a species is an unwanted organism.

It includes a group of nine organisms that are included in a national programme, the National Interest Pest Response programme (NPIR), that has been led by MPI to eradicate these pests. Phragmites is the only one of these nine organisms that has been found in the Tasman-Nelson region. It has been eradicated and has been listed In the Exclusion Programme.

It also includes 133 plant species that are part of the National Plant Pest Accord, a co-operative agreement between regional councils, Ministry of Primary Industries, Department of Conservation, and the Nursery and Garden Association, to prevent the sale and/or distribution of these plants where formal or casual horticultural trade is considered to be the most significant way of spreading these plants. It is a non-statutory agreement between organisations with a common interest in managing risks associated with the sale, distribution and propagation of harmful pest plants. MPI maintains the current list of plants and this can be downloaded from their website.

## 5 Pest Management Framework

### 5.1 Objectives

Objectives have been set for each pest or class of pests. As required by the National Policy Direction, the objectives include:

- (a) the particular adverse effect/s (Section 54(a) of the Act) to be addressed;
- (b) the intermediate outcomes of managing the pest;
- (c) the geographic area to which the objective applies;
- (d) the level of outcome, if applicable;
- (e) the period for achieving the outcome; and
- (f) the intended outcome in the first 10 years of the Plan (if the period is greater than 10 years).

Objectives are listed below for each of the five pest management programmes. For each objective, the adverse effects of pests may be on economic well-being, the natural or the productive environment, human health, recreational values, or the relationship between Māori, their culture, and their traditions and their ancestral lands, waters, sites, wāhi tapu, and taonga.

The Objective for pests listed in the Plan's **Exclusion Programme** is:  
Over the duration of this Plan, exclude the pests listed in the Exclusion Programme from the Tasman-Nelson region to prevent their adverse effects.

The Objective for pests listed in the Plan's **Eradication Programme** is:  
Over the duration of this Plan, eradicate the pests listed in the Eradication Programme to eliminate their adverse effects.

The Objective for pests listed in the Plan's **Progressive Containment Programme** is:  
Over the duration of this Plan, reduce the geographic distribution of the pests listed in the Progressive Containment Programme to reduce their adverse effects.

The Objective for pests listed in the Plan's **Sustained Control Programme** is:  
Over the duration of this Plan, control the pests listed in the Sustained Control Programme to reduce their adverse effects and spread to other properties.

The Objective for pests listed in the Plan's **Site-led Programme** is:  
Over the duration of this Plan, eradicate, progressively or sustainably control the pests listed in the Site-led Programme to eliminate or reduce their adverse effects to an extent that protects the values of that place.

### 5.2 Pest Management Programmes

There are five pest management programmes that will be used to control pests and any other organisms covered by this Proposed Plan. The types of programme are defined by the NPD and reflect outcomes in keeping with:

- (a) the extent of the invasion; and

- (b) whether it is possible to achieve the desired control levels for the pests.

The intermediate outcomes for the five programmes are described below.

- 1 **Exclusion Programme:** to prevent the establishment of the pest, or an organism being spread by the pest, that is present in New Zealand but not yet established in an area.
- 2 **Eradication Programme:** to reduce the infestation level of the pest, or an organism being spread by the pest, to zero levels in an area in the short to medium term.
- 3 **Progressive Containment Programme:** to reduce the geographic distribution of the pest, or an organism being spread by the pest, in an area in the short to medium term.
- 4 **Sustained Control Programme:** to provide for ongoing control of the pest, or an organism being spread by the pest, to reduce its impacts on values and its spread to other properties.
- 5 **Site-led Programme:** that the pest, or an organism being spread by the pest, that is capable of causing damage to a place, is excluded or eradicated from that place, or is contained, reduced, or controlled within the place to an extent that protects the values of that place.

### 5.3 Principal Measures to Manage Pests

The principal measures used in the Proposed Plan to achieve the objectives are in four main categories. Each category contains tools to be applied in appropriate circumstances.

#### 1 Requirement to act

Occupiers or other persons need to act when Plan rules require:

- (a) the presence of pests to be reported;
- (b) pests to be controlled or destroyed;
- (c) pests not to be spread (propagated, sold, distributed);
- (d) pathways to be managed (e.g. machinery, gravel, animals);
- (e) management plans to be prepared and submitted; and
- (f) programme actions to be reported (type, quantity, frequency, location, programme completion).

#### 2 Council inspection

Inspection by Council staff may include:

- (a) visiting properties or undertaking surveys to:
  - (i) determine whether pests are present;
  - (ii) determine compliance with rules and management programmes;
  - (iii) identify areas where control programmes will apply (places of value, exclusion zones, movement control areas);

- (b) managing compliance with regulations (rule enforcement, action on default, prosecution, exemptions);
- (c) undertaking control action where doing so is effective and cost-effective;
- (d) monitoring effectiveness of control.

### 3 **Service delivery**

Council may deliver the service:

- (a) where it is funded to do so within a rating district;
- (b) on a user-pays basis;
- (c) by providing control tools, including sourcing and distributing biological agents, or provisions (e.g. traps, chemicals).

### 4 **Advocacy and education**

Council may:

- (a) provide general purpose education, advice, awareness and publicity activities to occupiers and the public about pests and their control and the management of pathways;
- (b) encourage occupiers, agencies, organisations and community groups to control pests;
- (c) assist other agencies with control, advocacy, and sharing or sourcing of funding;
- (d) promote industry requirements and best practice to contractors and occupiers;
- (e) encourage occupiers and other persons to report any pests they find or to control them; or
- (f) facilitate or commission research.

## 5.4 **Rules**

Rules play an integral role in securing many of the pest management outcomes sought by the Proposed Plan. They create a safety net to protect occupiers from the effects of the actions or inactions of others where non-regulatory means are inappropriate or do not succeed. The amendments to the Act from the Biosecurity Law Reform Act 2012 allow those rules identified as **Good Neighbour Rules** in Plans to bind the Crown.

Section 73 of the Act prescribes the matters that may be addressed by rules, and the need to:

- (a) specify if the rule is to be designated as a 'Good Neighbour Rule';
- (b) specify if breaching the rule is an offence under the Act;
- (c) specify if an exemption to the rule, or any part of it, is allowable or not; and



- (d) explain the purpose of the rule.

Rules can apply to occupiers or to a person's actions in general. The NPD and accompanying guidance notes provide extra requirements for a **Good Neighbour Rule**. It must:

- (a) identify **who** the rule applies to - either all occupiers, or a specified class of occupier;
- (b) identify the **pest** to be managed;
- (c) state that the pest must already be **present** on the occupier's land;
- (d) state that the occupier of the **adjacent** or **nearby land** must, in the view of the Management Agency, be taking reasonable measures to **manage** the **pest** or its impacts on their land; and
- (e) (if relevant) state the particular values or uses of the neighbouring land that the pest's spread affects, and that the rule is intended to address.

## 6 Programme Descriptions

### 6.1 Exclusion Pests Programme

Exclusion pests are pests that are not known to be present in the Tasman-Nelson region that are capable of causing adverse impacts on economic well-being, the natural environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

#### Objective

Over the duration of this Plan, prevent the establishment of the pests listed in the Exclusion Programme from the Tasman-Nelson region to avoid adverse effects on economic well-being, the natural environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

#### Principal Measures

- (a) Requirement to Act: Occupiers are required to report sightings of any suspected Exclusion Pests to Tasman District Council.
- (b) Council inspection: The Management Agency will undertake surveillance in areas most likely to be infested.
- (c) Advocacy and education: The Management Agency will provide information to all interested parties on Exclusion Pests, their potential impact, and their likely vectors.
- (d) Service delivery: The Tasman District Council will undertake control work on these pests if found in the region or appoint another Agency to do so. The Department of Conservation will undertake control work on koi carp.

**Table 3: Exclusion Pests for the Tasman-Nelson Region**

Species	Description	Status
Chilean needle grass <i>Nassella neesiana</i>	An erect, tufted perennial tussock that can grow up to 1 m in height. It can replace productive pasture grasses in dry areas and is unpalatable to stock when panicle seed is present. The seed attaches to sheep's wool and can move through the pelt and muscle, downgrading wool and meat. It can also cause blindness in lambs. It is present in Hawkes Bay, Marlborough and Canterbury.	Production pest
Hornwort <i>Ceratophyllum demersum</i>	A vigorous invasive submerged aquatic perennial with stems up to 7 m long and considered to be one of worst water weeds introduced into New Zealand. It has been eradicated from the Moutere Stream and a number of freshwater ponds.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Indian myna <i>Acridotheres tristis</i>	An aggressive bird that feeds on insects, fruit and berries and can cause considerable economic loss. They are strongly territorial when nesting and are reputed to destroy the eggs and nestlings of other birds in their feeding area.	Production pest Environmental pest
Koi carp <i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	An ornamental strain of carp that can grow to 75 cm in length and weigh up to 10 kg. They destroy aquatic habitat and muddy waterways. It has been eradicated from the pond in the Queen's Gardens and from a number of ponds in the Lower Moutere area.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism

Species	Description	Status
Phragmites <i>Phragmites australis</i>	A tall perennial grass producing annual cane-like stems up to 6 m tall. It has thick underground roots (rhizomes) that form dense mats capable of blocking waterways. It has been eradicated from a site near Murchison.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Rooks <i>Corvus frugilegus</i>	A large black bird with a violet-blue glossy sheen. Large flocks cause serious damage to horticultural crops. It is an intermittent visitor from rookeries in the lower North Island and reported sightings in the past have generated a rapid response. Effective control in adjoining regions has prevented further arrivals in recent years.	Production pest
Senegal tea <i>Gymnocoronis spilanthoides</i>	A semi-aquatic perennial herb that can reach 1.5 m high when flowering. It can rapidly spread in freshwater and form dense floating mats, smothering other aquatic species and reducing oxygen availability. It has been eradicated from three ponds in Upper Moutere and Motueka.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Velvet Leaf <i>Abutilon theophrasti</i>	It is an annual broadleaf weed that can group to 1 - 2.5 m tall and competing for nutrients, space, and water with other arable crops. It was imported as a contaminant in imported fodder beet seed.	Production pest Unwanted organism
Wallabies (Bennett's, Dama) <i>Macropus rufogriseus</i> , <i>Macropus eugenii</i>	These marsupials browse on pasture and arable crops, reducing farm productivity. They also browse on a range of native species, depleting forest and scrub understorey and affecting regeneration. The Bennett's wallaby is spreading through South Canterbury and North Otago while the Dama wallaby is spreading though the Rotorua Lakes area.	Production pest Environmental pest Unwanted organisms (until 20 September 2021)

### 6.1.1 Rule

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region:

- (a) must report the presence of any Exclusion Plant Pests on their land within 5 working days of being sighted and any Exclusion Animal Pests on their land within 1 working day of being sighted; and
- (b) must not hold, display, sell, propagate or distribute any Exclusion Pest.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### **Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to prevent the establishment of these pests in the region.

## 6.2 Eradication Pests Programme

Eradication Pests are pests with a very restricted distribution in the Tasman-Nelson region that are capable of causing adverse impacts on economic well-being, the natural or the productive environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

## The Objective

Over the duration of this Plan, eradicate the pests listed in the Eradication Programme to eliminate their adverse effects on economic well-being, the natural environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

## Principal Measures

- (a) Requirement to Act: Occupiers are required to report sightings of any pest fish and *Spartina* to the Department of Conservation and to report any other Eradication Programme pests to Tasman District Council. Occupiers with wild kiwifruit on their land are required to destroy them.
- (b) Council inspection: The Management Agency will undertake surveillance in areas known or likely to be infested and monitor the effectiveness of control measures.
- (c) Advocacy and education: The Management Agency will provide information to all interested parties on identification and control of Eradication Pests, their potential impact, and their likely vectors.
- (d) Service delivery: Tasman District Council will undertake control work on the pests in Table 4 and 5 that have TDC listed in Column 3 on the occupier's behalf. The Department of Conservation will undertake work to destroy the pests listed in Table 4 that have DOC listed in Column 3 (*Gambusia*, Perch, Rudd, Tench and *Spartina*). Occupiers will be responsible for destroying wild kiwifruit (including abandoned and unmanaged kiwifruit) on their land. Occupiers in Golden Bay (excluding Awaroa) will be responsible for destroying feral rabbits on their land.

**Table 4: Eradication Pests in the Tasman-Nelson Region**

Species	Description	Status/Responsibility for Eradication
African feather grass <i>Cenchrus macrourus</i> (also called <i>Pennisetum macrourum</i> )	An aggressive perennial grass that forms dense tussocks up to 2 m high. It is a prolific seeder and can also spread through its rhizomes. It has low palatability and can rapidly become a major pest of sand dunes, roadsides, and wasteland.	Production pest Environmental pest <b>TDC</b>
Bathurst bur <i>Xanthium spinosum</i>	Bathurst bur is a shrubby annual herb up to 1 m high. It has well-branched, upright stems with triple spines. The seedlings are toxic to farm animals and poultry and compete with arable crops and pasture. Seeds can remain dormant in the soil for 15 years and germinate after disturbance.	Production pest <b>TDC</b>
Boxthorn <i>Lycium ferocissimum</i>	A densely-branched erect woody evergreen shrub with spines on branch tips. It invades production land and indigenous shrublands, forming dense impenetrable stands.	Production pest Environmental pest <b>TDC</b>
Cathedral bells <i>Cobaea scandens</i>	A vigorous perennial vine that can suppress native plant regeneration in disturbed or low forest, forest margins and open coastal forest. It has the potential to become a major problem in these areas.	Environmental pest <b>Unwanted organism</b> <b>TDC</b>

Species	Description	Status/Responsibility for Eradication
Climbing spindleberry <i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>	A vigorous perennial vine that can grow up to 12 m high. It can kill trees by smothering them due to its shade tolerance and rampant growth. It is one of the few climbers with the potential to invade cooler areas.	Production pest Environmental pest
Egeria <i>Egeria densa</i>	A vigorous, submerged, aquatic perennial that can grow to 5 m tall in still water, forming dense stands that reduce water flow, suppress other aquatic species, degrade the natural character of rivers and lakes, restrict water traffic, interfere with recreational activities and impede irrigation, water supplies and hydroelectricity operations.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism <b>TDC</b>
Entire marshwort <i>Nymphoides geminata</i>	It is a bottom-rooted, aquatic perennial with floating leaves growing on sediments in water up to 2.5 m deep. It can spread rapidly, out-compete water lilies and native species, obstruct water bodies, and alter the natural character of streams and lakes.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism <b>TDC</b>
Gambusia <i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Gambusia are small, silvery-green fish (3.5 - 6 cm) that can rapidly reproduce. They are very aggressive and attack fish much larger than themselves. Whitebait and mudfish species are especially vulnerable. They can tolerate poor water quality, a wide range of water temperatures, and can cope with and pose a major threat to aquatic organisms. Although a freshwater species, they can adapt to increases in salinity. An active campaign has been conducted against them and other pest fish by the Department of Conservation.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism <b>DOC</b>
Himalayan balsam <i>Impatiens glandulifera</i>	A tall annual plant growing rapidly up to 2.5 m tall. It thrives in damp conditions and is moderately shade-tolerant. It grows wild along streams and in wetland areas, and competes with native plants for light, space and pollinators (bees). It seeds heavily, allowing it to spread down waterways.	Environmental pest <b>TDC</b>
Indian ring-necked parakeet (feral) <i>Psittacula krameri</i>	An introduced pet that has escaped and could threaten native birds and bats by competing for food, taking nesting places and introducing diseases. They are well-known agricultural pests of some cereal and fruit crops.	Production pest Environmental pest Unwanted organism <b>TDC</b>
Madeira vine <i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Madeira vine is a perennial climber that can climb to 7 m high. It reproduces through the shedding and spread of stem tubers. It can displace native species in riparian and forest margins, especially in coastal areas, and kill small trees.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism <b>TDC</b>
Perch <i>Perca fluviatilis</i>	Perch are an olive-green fish with prominent stripes, growing to 60 cm in length and 2 kg in weight. They are part of a group described as coarse fish and feed on insects, small fish and their larvae. They pose a significant threat to native aquatic fauna in the Tasman-Nelson region and to recreational trout fisheries. An active campaign has been conducted against them and other pest fish by the Department of Conservation.	

Species	Description	Status/Responsibility for Eradication
Red-eared slider turtles (feral) <i>Chrysemys scripta elegans</i>	They are a medium-sized freshwater turtle that are native to the southern United States and considered to be one of the world's 100 worst invasive species. Their impact in the wild in New Zealand is largely unknown, but given their omnivorous diet, they could adversely impact aquatic plants, insects, eels, small fish and ground-nesting birds. They have been illegally released into Lake Killarney and the Motueka River.	Environmental pest <b>TDC</b>
Rudd <i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>	Rudd is a stocky, deep-bodied, olive-backed fish, growing up to 25 cm long and weighing up to 500 g. An active campaign has been conducted against them, along with other pest fish, by the Department of Conservation. Their feeding habits endanger native plant species, destroy indigenous habitat, remove food sources for native fish and invertebrate species, and impact negatively on water quality by stirring up bottom sediments and muddying water. They are classified as a "noxious fish" under the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1982 outside the Auckland and Waikato region.	Environmental pest <b>DOC</b>
Saffron thistle <i>Carthamus lanatus</i>	Saffron thistle is a prickly annual to biennial herb with woody stems, prominent spines and small yellow flower heads. Seeds remain viable for more than 20 years. It can form impenetrable, dense stands and can potentially devalue wool, injure stock and interfere with cereal harvesting. It is unpalatable and a threat to pastoral and arable production.	Production pest <b>TDC</b>
Spartina <i>Spartina anglica</i> <i>S. alterniflora</i>	Spartina is an aquatic, perennial grass, growing up to 80 cm high in estuaries and other coastal areas. It was originally planted to assist reclamation of tidal flats through its ability to trap sediment. Sediment trapped by Spartina can lead to flooding and restrict bird and flatfish habitat, alter drainage on adjacent flats and lead to deterioration of native plant cover.	Environmental pest <b>DOC</b>
Tench <i>Tinca tinca</i>	Tench are olive-green fish with bright orange eyes that can grow up to 4 kg and form part of a group described as coarse fish. They generally live in still or slow-flowing waters and are carnivorous, feeding on insect larvae, crustaceans and molluscs. They are considered to pose a significant threat to native aquatic fauna. An active campaign has been conducted by the Department of Conservation in recent times.	Environmental pest <b>DOC</b>
Wild kiwifruit (including unmanaged or abandoned) <i>Actinidia spp.</i>	Kiwifruit can spread into forests by birds carrying seed from unmanaged or abandoned orchards, or from wild (self-propagated) plants. Vines can smother native trees or shrubs and degrade plantation forests. In some North Island regions, vines have become a reservoir of kiwifruit threat organisms such as Psa, a disease of kiwifruit that has resulted in devastating losses for growers.	Production pest Environmental pest <b>Occupier</b>

### **6.2.1 Rule for Eradication Pests in the Tasman-Nelson region excluding wild kiwifruit (including unmanaged and abandoned plants) and pest fish**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must report sightings of Eradication Pests on their land to Tasman District Council within five working days of their sighting.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to eradicate these pests from the region. Tasman District Council, as management agency, will take responsibility for controlling Eradication Pests other than pest fish, Spartina and wild kiwifruit.

### **6.2.2 Specific Rule for Pest Fish in the Tasman-Nelson region**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must:

- (a) report any sightings of pest fish to the Department of Conservation (Motueka Office) within 5 working days of their sighting; and
- (b) allow access to Department of Conservation staff who have been authorised by Tasman District Council to monitor waterways and waterbodies and destroy any Eradication Programme Pests in water bodies on their land.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to eradicate pest fish from the region.

### **6.2.3 Specific Rule for Spartina in the Tasman-Nelson region**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must:

- (a) report any sightings of Spartina to the Motueka Office of the Department of Conservation within 5 working days of their sighting; and
- (b) allow access to Department of Conservation staff who have been authorised by Tasman District Council to destroy any Eradication Programme Pests on their land.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to eradicate Spartina from the region.

#### 6.2.4 Specific Rule for wild kiwifruit, including unmanaged or abandoned plants, in the Tasman-Nelson region

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must:

- (a) report any sightings of wild, unmanaged or abandoned kiwifruit to Tasman District Council within 5 days of their sighting;
- (b) allow access to Tasman District Council staff/contractors, or a Council authorised agent, to inspect any wild, unmanaged or abandoned kiwifruit vines on their property;
- (c) destroy any wild, unmanaged or abandoned kiwifruit vines on their property.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

##### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to facilitate the eradication of wild kiwifruit (including abandoned or unmanaged) vines from the region. Wild kiwifruit has a limited distribution in the Tasman-Nelson region and this rule is intended to ensure prompt removal of vines, leading to its eradication.

**Table 5: Eradication Pests in Parts of the Tasman-Nelson Region**

Species	Description	Status
Boneseed (outside Port Hills) <i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i>	A multi-branched bushy shrub, up to 3 m high. It is an aggressive coloniser in coastal sites (dunes, cliffs, salt marshes) and can displace desirable native species. Its seed can remain dormant when deeply buried for more than 10 years.	Environmental pest <b>Unwanted organism</b> <b>TDC</b>
Feral rabbits (Golden Bay excluding Awaroa) <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Feral rabbits were introduced by settlers for food and quickly became pests in rural areas, browsing on crops, pasture and tussock grasslands, creating erosion in lower rainfall areas with their burrows. They have also provided a food-source for predators of native birds and animals.	Production pest Environmental pest <b>Occupier</b>

#### 6.2.5 Specific Rule for Boneseed in the Tasman-Nelson region excluding the Port Hills

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region outside the Port Hills, as shown on Map 1, must report sightings of this pest on their land to Tasman District Council within five working days of their sighting.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

##### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to facilitate the eradication of Boneseed in the region outside the Port Hills. Tasman District Council, as management agency, will take responsibility for controlling this Pests.

#### 6.2.6 Specific Rule for Feral Rabbits in the Golden Bay area excluding Awaroa



Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Golden Bay area excluding Awaroa, as shown on Map 2, must eradicate this pest on their land within five working days of their sighting.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

### **Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to facilitate the eradication of feral rabbits in Golden Bay (excluding Awaroa).

## **6.3 Progressive Containment Pest Programme**

Progressive Containment Pests are pests with a limited distribution in the Tasman-Nelson region that are unlikely to be eradicated because of their biological characteristics and are capable of causing adverse impacts on economic well-being, the natural or the productive environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

### **The Objective**

Over the duration of this Plan, reduce the geographic distribution of the pests listed in the Progressive Containment Programme to decrease their adverse effects on economic well-being, the natural environment, human health, recreation values, or cultural values.

### **Principal Measures**

- (a) Requirement to Act: Occupiers are required to control all Progressive Containment Pests on their land.
- (b) Council inspection: The Management Agency may undertake surveillance in areas known or likely to be infested and monitor the effectiveness of control measures.
- (c) Advocacy and education: The Management Agency will provide information to the public on identification and control of Progressive Containment Pests, their potential impact, and their likely vectors.

**Table 6: Progressive Containment Pests in the Tasman-Nelson Region**

<b>Species</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Status</b>
Bomarea <i>Bomarea multiflora</i>	Bomarea is a tuberous-rooted vines that produces clusters of brightly coloured trumpet-shaped flowers, orange on the outside, and yellow with red spots on the inside. It can invade remnant forest and shrubland, with the vines growing into the tree canopy and forming large masses, overtopping and smothering the supporting trees, and preventing the establishment of native species.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Chinese pennisetum <i>Cenchrus purpurascens</i> (was <i>Pennisetum alopecuroides</i> )	It is a tufted, perennial grass that forms large tussocks around 1 m high. It is generally unpalatable to stock and can invade productive farmland and reduce pasture productivity.	Production pest Unwanted organism

Species	Description	Status
Chocolate vine <i>Akebia quinata</i>	Akebia is a vine with purple flowers with an odour similar to chocolate or vanilla. It can form dense mats that overrun ground cover as well as climbing and smothering shrubs/young trees.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Gunnera <i>Gunnera tinctoria</i> <i>Gunnera manicata</i>	Gunnera is an invasive, large clump-forming herbaceous plant with large, fleshy rhizomes and massive umbrella-sized leaves that can form dense stands along waterways, crowding out more desirable species. It is a prolific seeder and the seeds can be carried down waterways.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism ( <i>Gunnera tinctoria</i> )
Knotweeds (Asiatic, Giant and hybrids) <i>Fallopia japonica</i> , <i>F. sachalinensis</i>	A multi-stemmed perennial shrub up to 4 m high that can form dense long-lived thickets, smothering or preventing the establishment of other desirable species. It can rapidly become a major pest of riparian margins, roadsides and wasteland.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Purple loosestrife <i>Lythrum salicaria</i>	Purple loosestrife is an erect perennial herb, growing up to 3 m high. It reproduces prolifically by both seed dispersal and vegetative propagation, and can invade wetlands. The seed can remain viable for many years. If left untreated, it can almost entirely eliminate open water habitat and diminish the recreational and aesthetic values of wetlands and waterways.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Queensland poplar <i>Homalanthus populifolius</i>	Queensland poplar is a small tree up to 5 m tall that seeds prolifically. The seeds are spread by birds and carried by water. It is shade-tolerant and invades roadsides and reverting scrubland and forest margins, displacing native species.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Reed sweet grass <i>Glyceria maxima</i>	Reed sweet grass grows up to 1.8 m high on the edge of water bodies. It can form dense impenetrable mats that impede access and drainage, causing silt accumulation and flooding, replacing other aquatic margin vegetation and degrading habitat for aquatic fauna. It has been implicated in cyanide poisoning of livestock. It represents a significant threat to wetlands and stock.	Environmental pest <b>TDC</b>
Variiegated thistle <i>Silybum marianum</i>	Variiegated thistle is a conspicuous, robust, spiny annual or biennial plant, growing up to 2.5 m high, and forming dense stands in pasture and wasteland. It will suppress desirable pasture and its spines can be toxic and cause injury to animals. It has the potential to have a significant impact on pastoral and crop production and is difficult to eradicate with its seed being viable for more than 20 years.	Production pest
White-edged nightshade <i>Solanum marginatum</i>	White-edged nightshade is a thorny, multi-branched perennial shrub found on disturbed land, waste areas and scrubland. It can invade regenerating shrubland, bush margins and pastureland, forming dense impenetrable thickets and producing berries that are poisonous to humans and stock.	Production pest Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Yellow flag <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Yellow flag is a robust aquatic perennial that grows on swampy ground and the margins of water bodies, salt marsh, and wet sandy areas. It is an internationally renowned weed of wetlands, growing up to 2 m high, and forming mats of dense rhizomes that are toxic to stock and can overtop native species. These can cause flooding and change water levels in swamps. Its seed is poisonous to stock and birds.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism

Species	Description	Status
Yellow jasmine <i>Jasminum humile</i>	Yellow jasmine is a shade-tolerant scrambling shrub up to 2.5 m tall with clusters of yellow trumpet-shaped flowers. It can form large patches in forest gaps and on coastal cliffs, smothering and excluding native species.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism

### 6.3.1 Rule for Progressive Containment Pests

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must destroy any Progressive Containment Pests on their land prior to the completion of flowering or before the early stages of seed formation.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of these pests in the region.

Table 7: Progressive Containment Pests in Parts of the Tasman-Nelson Region

Species	Description	Status
Banana passion vine (Golden Bay-Riwaka, Upper Buller) <i>Passiflora tripartita</i> <i>var. mollissima</i> , <i>P. tarminiana</i>	Banana passion vine is a large, vigorous, scrambling evergreen climbing vine with clinging tendrils, capable of climbing to 10 m or higher. It can smother native trees and shrubs on forest margins and adjoining light wells, topple shallow-rooted trees and prevent natural regeneration. It has the potential to invade much of the regenerating lowland and represents a significant threat to indigenous biodiversity in Golden Bay and the Upper Buller.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Climbing asparagus (Eastern Golden Bay) <i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Climbing asparagus is a vine with thin wiry branching stems that wrap around small trees and saplings, and fine, feathery foliage with small leaves. The flowers produce small orange berries containing 1-2 seeds that are widely spread by birds. It is shade-tolerant and can establish in forest and scrubland understorey, carpeting the forest floor and preventing native seedling regrowth, as well as ring-barking trees and saplings.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Nassella tussock (outside the Cape Soucis area) <i>Nassella trichotoma</i>	Nassella is a perennial tussock that can invade and smother desirable grassland species on lower fertility sites. It is generally unpalatable to stock. It produces large quantities of seed with a long seed life that can be carried up to a kilometre by wind. Seed dispersal also occurs by water, animals, vehicles and agricultural produce.	Production pest Unwanted organism
Old man's beard (Golden Bay to Riwaka, Upper Buller) <i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Old man's beard is a deciduous woody climber that can reach up to 25 m high. It produces conspicuous white flowers in late summer that turn into a dense down in autumn containing the seeds (up to 10,000/m <sup>2</sup> ). It has the potential to invade most lowland areas of scrubland and forest up to 750 m above sea level and, with a lifespan that exceeds 30 years, presents an extraordinary threat to natural values.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism
Wild ginger (Golden Bay - Kaiteriteri) Kahili ginger <i>Hedychium</i> <i>gardnerianum</i> Yellow ginger <i>H. flavescens</i>	Wild ginger (both species) grows up to 2 m high, producing massive branching rhizomes that can form a dense layer up to 1 m thick, preventing any regeneration. Although frost sensitive, their shade-tolerance allows them to grow under an overhead canopy. These plants have invaded indigenous forest and regenerating shrublands in coastal areas at the top of the South Island, suppressing indigenous regeneration, blocking streams and drains, and restricting access for recreation.	Environmental pest Unwanted organisms
Woolly nightshade (Golden Bay) <i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Woolly nightshade is an invasive, aggressive and fast-growing shrub that can grow up to 10 m high and live for over 20 years. It forms dense colonies that prevent native plant regeneration. The dust from the leaves and stems can irritate the skin, eyes, nose and throat. It seeds prolifically and the berries are poisonous to humans, cattle and pigs.	Production pest Environmental pest Unwanted organism

**6.3.3 Specific Rule for Banana Passion Vine in the Golden Bay - Riwaka and Upper Buller areas**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers in the Golden Bay area, as shown on Map 3, must destroy any banana passion vine on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in Golden Bay.

**6.3.4 Specific Rule for Climbing Asparagus in eastern Golden Bay**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers in the eastern Golden Bay area, as shown on Map 4, must destroy any climbing asparagus on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in eastern Golden Bay.

**6.3.5 Specific Rule for Nassella Tussock excluding the Cape Soucis area**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers in the region excluding the Cape Soucis area, as shown on Map 5, must destroy any Nassella tussock on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in the region outside the Cape Soucis area.

**6.3.6 Specific Rule for Old Man's Beard in the area from Golden Bay to Kaiteriteri and the Upper Buller area**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers in the Golden Bay to Riwaka area and the Upper Buller area, as shown on Map 6, must destroy any Old Man's Beard on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in the Golden Bay to Riwaka area.

### 6.3.7 Specific Rule for Wild Ginger in the Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri area

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri area, as shown on Map 7, must destroy any wild ginger on their land and report sightings to Tasman District Council.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### **Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in the Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri area.

## 6.4 Sustained Control Pests Programme

Sustained Control Pests are pests that are abundant in parts of the Tasman-Nelson region and are capable of causing adverse impacts on economic well-being, the natural environment, human health, recreational values, or cultural values.

#### **The Objective**

Over the duration of this Plan, control the pests listed in the Sustained Control programme to slow their spread and minimise their adverse effects.

#### **Principal Measures**

- (a) Requirement to Act: Occupiers are required to control all Sustained Control Pests on their land.
- (b) Council inspection: The Management Agency will undertake surveillance in areas known or likely to be infested and monitor the effectiveness of control measures.
- (c) Advocacy and education: The Management Agency will provide information to the public on identification and control of Sustained Control Pests, their potential impact, and their likely vectors.

**Table 8: Sustained Control Pests in the Tasman-Nelson Region**

Species	Description	Status
Lagarosiphon <i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Lagarosiphon is an aggressive freshwater weed that grows in water down to 6 m and forms large dense mats of interwoven stems. It will shade out desirable plants, impede water flow and restrict recreational activities. It is spread by vegetative fragments moving down waterways, in fishing nets or on boats and trailers.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism

**6.4.1 Specific Rule for Lagarosiphon in freshwater bodies of Tasman and Nelson**

Over the duration of this Plan, boat owners and other water users must remove all fragments of Lagarosiphon from boats and equipment immediately upon leaving infested waterways, and occupiers of waterbodies in Tasman District and Nelson City, on the direction of an authorised officer, must control any Lagarosiphon on the bed of waterbodies that they occupy.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

**Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to reduce its impact on other values and its spread to other freshwater bodies.

**Table 9: Sustained Control Pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson Region**

Species	Description	Status
Broom (Howard-St Arnaud) <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Broom is a fast-growing invasive perennial shrub that grows to 3 m with conspicuous yellow flowers, producing pods containing black seeds that are viable for many years. These seeds have been distributed along waterways, in gravel and in dirt on machinery. It can invade pasture and reduce its productivity, and invade river beds and regenerating scrubland.	Production pest Environmental pest
Gorse (Howard - St Arnaud) <i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Gorse is a fast-growing invasive woody perennial shrub that grows to 3 m and forms dense spiny thickets that can regrow if cut or burnt. It has conspicuous yellow flowers, producing pods containing black seeds that are viable for many years. These seeds have been distributed along waterways, in gravel and in dirt on machinery. It competes aggressively with other species for light, nutrients and moisture, provides habitat for animal pests and reduces recreational and amenity values.	Production pest Environmental pest
Nassella tussock (Cape Soucis area) <i>Nassella trichotoma</i>	Nassella is a perennial tussock that can invade and smother desirable grassland species on lower fertility sites. It is generally unpalatable to stock. It produces large quantities of seed with a long seed life that can be carried up to a kilometre by wind. Seed dispersal also occurs by water, animals, vehicles and agricultural produce.	Production pest Unwanted organism
Sabella (coastal marine area) <i>Sabella spallanzanii</i>	Sabella (Mediterranean fanworm) are marine worms in harbours and estuaries that live inside tough flexible tubes up to 40 cm long. The tubes are attached to hard surfaces on vessels and structures and have a single spiral fan extending out the top. They can form dense colonies and compete for nutrients with commercial crops (eg, mussels) and native marine organisms.	Production pest Environmental pest
Yellow bristle grass (Golden Bay and Upper Buller) <i>Setaria pumila</i>	Yellow bristle grass is an aggressive annual-seeding plant which spreads rapidly through pasture, reducing pasture quality and causing production losses. It has low palatability and this leads to rapid re-infestation and an opening for other weeds. The barbed seed is transported in dung, fur and feathers, as well as by water, in soil, and as contaminants of hay and maize.	Production pest

**6.4.2 Specific Rule for Broom in the Howard - St Arnaud area**

Over the duration of this Plan, on the direction of an authorised officer, occupiers in the Howard - St Arnaud area, as shown on Map 8, must destroy any broom on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce its impact on other values and its spread to other properties in the Howard - St Arnaud area.

**6.4.3 Specific Rule for Gorse in the Howard - St Arnaud area**

Over the duration of this Plan, on the direction of an authorised officer, occupiers in the Howard - St Arnaud area, as shown on Map 10, must destroy any gorse on their land prior to the completion of flowering.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce its impact on other values and its spread to other properties in the Howard - St Arnaud area.

**6.4.4 Specific Rule for Nassella Tussock in the Cape Soucis area**

Over the duration of this Plan, on the direction of an authorised officer, occupiers in the area to the south-west of Cape Soucis, as shown on Map 11, must control any Nassella tussock on their land.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce its impact on other values and its spread to other properties in the Cape Soucis area.

**6.4.5 Specific Rule for Sabella in the coastal marine areas of Tasman and Nelson**

Over the duration of this Plan, on the direction of an authorised officer, the owners of marine structures in coastal marine areas of Tasman District and Nelson City, as shown in Figure 1, must destroy any Sabella on their structures, and the owners of vessels in these ports must remove any Sabella on their vessel surfaces.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N (19) of the Act.



**Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to reduce its impact on other values and its spread in the coastal marine area.

**6.4.6 Specific Rule for Yellow Bristle Grass in Golden Bay and the Upper Buller areas**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers in the areas of Tasman-Nelson region in Golden Bay and the Upper Buller area, as shown on Map 12, must destroy Yellow Bristle Grass on their land prior to the completion of flowering. To prevent its spread, roading authorities responsible for controlling roadside vegetation must require contractors to clean machinery to remove Yellow Bristle Grass before mowing areas that are free from this pest.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

**Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest to protect the dairy industry in these parts of the region.

**Table 10: Sustained Control Programme in the Tasman-Nelson Region subject to Boundary Rules**

Species	Description	Status
Blackberry <i>Rubus fruticosus agg.</i>	Blackberry is a prickly scrambling perennial that can form impenetrable thickets, preventing access. Seed is produced in berries that are spread by birds and can invade lightly-grazed pastoral land and recently disturbed sites. The thickets can harbour animal pests, trap sheep, and suppress the growth of desirable plants.	Production pest Environmental pest
Black spot <i>Venturia inaequalis</i>	Black spot is a fungus that grows on the leaves and fruit of apple trees. It spreads from spores in leaf material on the ground and causes premature leaf fall, degradation and rejection of fruit.	Production pest
Codling moth <i>Cydia pomonella</i>	Codling moth is a small grey moth that is hosted by apple, pear and walnut trees. It lays eggs that hatch into caterpillars that bore small holes in the fruit, causing degradation and rejection.	Production pest
European canker <i>Neonectria ditissima</i>	European canker is a fungal disease that can devastate apple orchards in locations with high autumn and winter rainfall. The fungal spores are carried by wind and in water droplets and these enter the tree through pruning wounds or scars from bud break, petal fall, harvesting and leaf fall. This causes shoot dieback and stem girdling.	Production pest
Fireblight <i>Erwinia amylovora</i>	Fireblight is a bacteria that infects apple and pear trees causing blackening of the leaves, twigs and flowers. It is transmitted by insects, birds and contaminated orchard equipment. Fruit imported into major overseas markets must come from fireblight-free orchards.	Production pest

Species	Description	Status
Giant buttercup <i>Ranunculus acris</i>	Giant buttercup is a hairy perennial growing up to 1 m high that is a pest in dairy pastures in higher rainfall areas. The seeds may be viable for up to 20 years and can be spread by machinery and animals and in water.	Production pest
Nodding thistle <i>Carduus nutans</i>	Nodding thistle is an annual or biennial plant up to 1.5 m tall with large purple flowers. It produces heavy seeds that are viable for 10 years. It is a very aggressive thistle and can spread quickly through pasture, reducing grazing productivity. It can restrict stock movement and provide habitat for rabbits and vermin. Its spines stick to wool, lowering its value. The seeds are spread by animals, machinery, hay and water.	Production pest
Powdery mildew <i>Podospaera leucotricha</i>	Powdery mildew is a fungus that affects the tips of growing shoots on apple trees, slowing growth and reducing fruit quality and production.	Production pest
Ragwort <i>Jacobaea vulgaris</i> (previously known as <i>Senecio jacobaea</i> )	Ragwort is a biennial or perennial herb growing up to 60 cm that can reproduce from crowns, roots and seeds. The seed can be distributed by wind, water, farm animals, hay and farm machinery. The plants are toxic to cattle and can rapidly displace more desirable grassland species, lowering pasture quality and productivity.	Production pest

#### 6.4.7 Boundary Rule for Blackberry

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must destroy Blackberry on their land located within 10 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of Blackberry, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

#### 6.4.8 Boundary Rule for Black Spot

Over the duration of this Plan:

- (a) occupiers on a pipfruit orchard within the Tasman-Nelson region within 500 m of another pipfruit orchard must control black spot to the recognised industry standard;
- (b) occupiers on land adjoining a pipfruit orchard that contains trees that host this pest shall allow the adjoining orchardist, or an agreed third party, access to control these pests to industry standards. If the landowner is unwilling to provide the necessary access, direction from an authorised officer will be required. The control work will be done at the orchardist's expense. The occupier can require the orchardist to use control measures recognised by certifying organic agencies. In order to apply this rule, the orchardist must:

- give notice to landowner that control is required, and that they intend to enter their land with the intention of carrying out control operations, listing the control methods and the proposed chemicals to be used; and
- comply with Worksafe health and safety standards and provide the adjoining occupier (where control is to occur) with copies of documents confirming these standards have been met (Growsafe/Approved Handler, First Aid Certificate).

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto pipfruit orchards where this pest is being controlled to the recognised industry standard.

**6.4.9 Boundary Rule for Codling Moth**

Over the duration of this Plan:

- (a) occupiers on a pipfruit orchard within the Tasman-Nelson region within 500 m of another pipfruit orchard must control codling moth to the recognised industry standard;
- (b) occupiers on land adjoining a pipfruit orchard that contains trees that host this pest shall allow the adjoining orchardist, or an agreed third party, access to control these pests to industry standards. If the landowner is unwilling to provide the necessary access, direction from an authorised officer will be required. The control work will be done at the orchardist's expense. The occupier can require the orchardist to use control measures recognised by certifying organic agencies. In order to apply this rule, the orchardist must:
  - give notice to landowner that control is required, and that they intend to enter their land with the intention of carrying out control operations, listing the control methods and the proposed chemicals to be used; and
  - comply with Worksafe health and safety standards and provide the adjoining occupier (where control is to occur) with copies of documents confirming these standards have been met (Growsafe/Approved Handler, First Aid Certificate).

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto pipfruit orchards where this pest is being controlled to the recognised industry standard.

**6.4.10 Boundary Rule for European Canker**

Over the duration of this Plan:

- (a) occupiers on a pipfruit orchard within the Tasman-Nelson region within 500 m of another pipfruit orchard must control European canker to the recognised industry standard;
- (b) occupiers on land adjoining a pipfruit orchard that contains trees that host this pest shall allow the adjoining orchardist, or an agreed third party, access to control these pests to industry standards. If the landowner is unwilling to provide the necessary access, direction from an authorised officer will be required. The control work will be done at the orchardist's expense. The occupier can require the orchardist to use control measures recognised by certifying organic agencies. In order to apply this rule, the orchardist must:
  - give notice to landowner that control is required, and that they intend to enter their land with the intention of carrying out control operations, listing the control methods and the proposed chemicals to be used; and
  - comply with Worksafe health and safety standards and provide the adjoining occupier (where control is to occur) with copies of documents confirming these standards have been met (Growsafe/Approved Handler, First Aid Certificate).

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto pipfruit orchards where this pest is being controlled to the recognised industry standard.

**6.4.11 Boundary Rule for Fireblight**

Over the duration of this Plan:

- (a) occupiers on a pipfruit orchard within the Tasman-Nelson region within 500 m of another pipfruit orchard must control fireblight to the recognised industry standard;
- (b) occupiers on land adjoining a pipfruit orchard that contains trees that host this pest shall allow the adjoining orchardist, or an agreed third party, access to control these pests to industry standards. If the landowner is unwilling to provide the necessary access, direction from an authorised officer will be required. The control work will be done at the orchardist's expense. The occupier can require the orchardist to use control measures recognised by certifying organic agencies. In order to apply this rule, the orchardist must:
  - give notice to landowner that control is required, and that they intend to enter their land with the intention of carrying out control operations, listing the control methods and the proposed chemicals to be used; and
  - comply with Worksafe health and safety standards and provide the adjoining occupier (where control is to occur) with copies of documents confirming these standards have been met (Growsafe/Approved Handler, First Aid Certificate).

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto pipfruit orchards where this pest is being controlled to the recognised industry standard.

**6.4.12 Boundary Rule for Giant Buttercup**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must destroy giant buttercup on their land located within 5 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of giant buttercup, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

**6.4.13 Boundary Rule for Nodding Thistle**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must destroy Nodding Thistle on their land located within 20 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of Nodding Thistle, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

**6.4.14 Boundary Rule for Powdery Mildew**

Over the duration of this Plan:

- (a) occupiers on a pipfruit orchard within the Tasman-Nelson region within 500 m of another pipfruit orchard must control powdery mildew to the recognised industry standard;
- (b) occupiers on land adjoining a pipfruit orchard that contains trees that host this pest shall allow the adjoining orchardist, or an agreed third party, access to control these pests to industry standards. If the landowner is unwilling to provide the necessary access, direction from an authorised officer will be required. The control work will be done at the orchardist's expense. The occupier can require the orchardist to use control measures recognised by certifying organic agencies. In order to apply this rule, the orchardist must:

- give notice to landowner that control is required, and that they intend to enter their land with the intention of carrying out control operations, listing the control methods and the proposed chemicals to be used; and
- comply with Worksafe health and safety standards and provide the adjoining occupier (where control is to occur) with copies of documents confirming these standards have been met (Growsafe/Approved Handler, First Aid Certificate).

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto pipfruit orchards where this pest is being controlled to the recognised industry standard.

#### **6.4.15 Boundary Rule for Ragwort**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region must destroy ragwort on their land located within 20 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of ragwort, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

#### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

**Table 11: Sustained Control Pests in parts of the Tasman-Nelson Region subject to Boundary Rules**

<b>Species</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Status</b>
Broom (outside the Howard - St Arnaud area) <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Broom is a fast-growing invasive perennial shrub that grows to 3 m with conspicuous yellow flowers, producing pods containing black seeds that are viable for many years. These seeds have been distributed along waterways, in gravel and in dirt on machinery.	Production pest Environmental pest
Gorse (outside the Howard - St Arnaud area) <i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Gorse is a fast-growing invasive woody perennial shrub that grows to 3 m and forms dense spiny thickets that can regrow if cut or burnt. It has conspicuous yellow flowers, producing pods containing black seeds that are viable for many years. These seeds have been distributed along waterways, in gravel and in dirt on machinery. It competes aggressively with other species for light, nutrients and moisture, provides habitat for animal pests and reduces recreational and amenity values.	Production pest Environmental pest

#### **6.4.16 Boundary Rule for Broom in the Tasman-Nelson region outside the Howard - St Arnaud area**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region **outside** the Howard - St Arnaud area, as shown on Map 8, must destroy broom on their land located within 10 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of broom, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

##### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

#### **6.4.17 Boundary Rule for Gorse in the Tasman-Nelson region outside the Howard – St Arnaud area**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the Tasman-Nelson region **outside** the Howard - St Arnaud area, as shown on Map 10, must destroy gorse on their land located within 10 m of the boundary of land that is clear, or being cleared, of gorse, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

##### ***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to control the spread of this pest onto adjoining land that is clear, or being cleared, of this pest, and where it can be shown that this would cause unreasonable cost to the adjoining occupier.

### **6.5 Site-led Pests Programme**

Site-led Pests are pests, or organisms spread by the pest, in the Tasman-Nelson region that are capable of causing adverse impacts in sites with high natural values.

#### **The Objective**

Over the duration of this Plan, eradicate or progressively control the pests listed in the Site-led Programme to eliminate or minimise their adverse effects on the values of that place (Section 5.1 p.18).

#### **Principal Measures**

- (a) Requirement to Act: Occupiers are required to control all pests within the places that have been identified to the extent that the values of that place are protected.
- (b) Council inspection: The Management Agency may undertake surveillance in the places that have been identified to monitor the effectiveness of control measures.

- (c) Advocacy and education: The Management Agency will provide information to the public on identification and control of Site-led Pests, their potential impact, and their likely vectors.



Table 12: Sites in the Site-led Programme

Sites	Description	Pests
Mt Richmond Forest Park (sites to be defined later)	Mt Richmond Forest Park stretches for 100 km along the Mt Richmond Range from St Arnaud to the coast, forming the eastern backdrop to Nelson city through to Wakefield. Most of the park is covered in beech forest with fire-induced vegetation (manuka, kanuka, bracken and gorse) around the margins, and alpine grasslands around some of the higher peaks. There are areas of high biodiversity value that include the mineral belt, where ultramafic rocks have produced soils with very high levels of magnesium, nickel and chromite, resulting in unique ecosystems and species. There is concern that some areas are at risk from wilding conifers.	Douglas fir Lodgepole pine Radiata pine Scots pine
Nelson City (north-eastern area)	Nelson City Council has developed a programme, Nelson Nature, in partnership with the Department of Conservation, private landowners and many individuals who are undertaking weed and pest control, to restore the region's natural environment. There is concern that the rapid spread of Taiwan cherry into the hills adjoining the eastern and northern areas of the City could impact on native bush remnants and regenerating shrubland. An intensive local campaign has been undertaken to destroy the Taiwan cherry wildings and to work with landowners in take-off sites to replace their mature Taiwan cherry trees.	Taiwan Cherry
St Arnaud Village	St Arnaud is an alpine village close to Lake Rotoiti. It is positioned between Nelson Lakes National Park and other public conservation land containing natural forests, wetlands and frost-flat shrublands vulnerable to invasion by a suite of plant pests that. Some of these weeds, if left to mature into sustaining populations, would destroy these natural values. There is strong community interest and pride in the natural environment of the village and close connections between residents/occupiers and the conservation lands adjacent.	Darwin's Barberry Greater bindweed Holly Rowan Russell lupin Sycamore
Waimea Estuary (Pearl Creek and Dominion Stream areas)	There is strong community and Department of Conservation support for intensive pest control in the relatively undeveloped areas along the southern side of Waimea Estuary to protect rare and threatened plants and animals and important populations of coastal wetland and migratory wading birds (banded rail, marsh crake, Australasian bittern). Community groups have taken responsibility for implementing intensive pest control at five separate sites.	Feral cats Brush-tail possums  Ferrets Stoats Weasels

Table 13: Pests in the Site-led Programme

Site	Species	Description	Status
Mt Richmond Forest Park (sites to be defined later)	Douglas fir <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> Lodgepole pine <i>Pinus contorta</i> Radiata pine <i>P. radiata</i> Scots pine <i>P. sylvestris</i>	<p>Eleven species of conifers were listed in Table 2 as being potential wilding conifers. Four of these species, listed in the left hand column, have the potential to be significant pests when growing on nearby take-off sites upwind from sites of high natural value in Mt Richmond Forest Park. Two species, Radiata pine and Douglas fir, are very valuable commercial species that have been planted extensively throughout the region. Most of these plantings are in commercial forests, located well away from high-value conservation areas. The wildings from these two species have largely arisen from plantings of shelter belts and stands on private land close to the conservation areas.</p> <p>Lodgepole pine was originally planted to stabilise an eroding hillside on steep mountainous terrain on the eastern side of Golden Downs Forest. Scots pine was included in some early experimental plantings in Golden Downs forest. Burning of hillsides left bare ground, suitable for conifer seed carried by gale-force winds from trees in exposed situations to establish and form new stands. Most pines are pioneering species and will only establish on disturbed sites, on bare land or in tussock grassland. However, Douglas fir seedlings have proved to be moderately shade-tolerant and able to establish in scrubland, on the margins of native forest, and occasionally in light wells within the forest.</p> <p>Lodgepole pine is the most invasive and is capable of establishing on alpine grasslands and scrublands above the existing bushline up to 2000 m, outgrowing most native species and becoming the dominant species.</p>	Environmental pest Unwanted organism ( <i>Pinus contorta</i> )
Nelson City (north-east area)	Taiwan cherry and cultivars <i>Prunus campanulata</i>	Taiwan cherry is a deciduous tree that flowers prolifically, producing small succulent fruit that is attractive to many birds. Birds have transported the seed and it has become established in shrublands, forest margins and road sides. It has also established in forests in very low light conditions. It has spread quickly into selected areas adjoining Nelson City's eastern boundary from Enner Glynn northwards. Nelson City Council has instituted a control programme as part of its Nelson Nature programme.	

Site	Species	Description	Status
St Arnaud Village	Darwin's Barberry <i>Berberis darwinii</i>	An evergreen spiny long-lived shrub from Chile and Argentina, tolerant of cold conditions, with orange flowers that produce black berries during summer and autumn. These are eaten by birds, spreading the seeds. The young seedlings can establish and become the dominant vegetation in frost-flat shrublands, regenerating forest and mature beech forest edges. To prevent dispersal of seeds by birds into vulnerable natural areas, it is important that all plants of seeding age are destroyed.	Environmental pest Unwanted organism (NPPA)
	Greater bindweed <i>Calystegia sylvatica</i>	A perennial climbing vine from southern Europe with attractive funnel shaped pale pink flowers with an extensive rhizome network and nodes with fibrous roots, capable of smothering low-growing vegetation. It is difficult to destroy once established and easily moved with transfer of soil on machines, therefore prevention of spread is important.	Environmental pest
	Holly <i>Ilex aquifolium</i>	A deciduous tree from Europe, tolerant of cold conditions, that produces masses of red berries during winter. These are eaten by birds, spreading the seeds. The young seedlings are shade-tolerant and can form dense stands within intact native beech forest, crowding out native plants. To prevent dispersal of seeds by birds into vulnerable natural areas, it is important that all plants of seeding age are destroyed.	Environmental pest
	Rowan <i>Sorbus aucuparia</i>	A deciduous tree from Europe, tolerant of cold conditions, that produces moderate quantities of red berries during winter that are widely dispersed by birds. The young seedlings are shade-tolerant and can form dense stands within intact beech forest, but also in wetlands, forest edges, and regenerating forest. To prevent dispersal of seeds by birds into vulnerable natural areas around the village it is important that all plants of seeding age are destroyed.	Environmental pest
	Russell lupin <i>Lupinus polyphyllus</i>	A perennial herb from North America that produces colourful flower spikes up to 60 cm. It produces large quantities of long-lived seed that are distributed by water (and inadvertently by humans) that form dense self-replacing stands in river beds and wetlands. The banks of Black Valley Stream and shingle shores of Lake Rotoiti are vulnerable to invasion by this weed.	Environmental pest
	Sycamore <i>Acer pseudoplatanus</i>	A deciduous tree from central Europe and south-west Asia, tolerant of cold conditions, that produces large quantities of winged seeds. These are spread by wind over moderate distances and can establish on tussock grasslands, shrublands and forest land, preventing the recruitment of native species.	Environmental pest

Site	Species	Description	Status
Waimea Estuary (Pearl Creek and Dominion Stream areas)	Feral cats	Feral cats predate on rodents, rabbits, birds and reptiles and, to a lesser extent, invertebrates. They are a major predator of native birds and animals and have had a significant impact on biodiversity values. They can carry bovine tuberculosis and spread Toxoplasmosis.	Environmental pest
	Brush-tail possum	The possum was introduced in the late 1800s to establish a fur trade and is now widely distributed. They are a major vector of bovine tuberculosis, have damaged extensive areas of native and exotic forests through canopy browsing, and predate on nesting birds and their eggs.	Production pest Environmental pest
	Ferrets, stoats and weasels)	Mustelids were introduced to New Zealand in the 1870s and 1880s to control rabbits. They prey on reptiles and birds that evolved in the absence of mammalian predators. Stoats are the dominant predator, widely distributed through forest land, with the ability to climb and kill hole-nesting birds, chicks and eggs. Ferrets prefer open terrain and kill ground-nesting birds. Weasels are present in much lower numbers and will feed on lizards and insects as well as birds. Ferrets and stoats are potential vectors of bovine tuberculosis.	Production pest Environmental pest

#### 6.5.1 **Example of a Specific Rule for the four species of Wilding Conifer listed in Table 13 on land adjoining Mt Richmond Forest Park, Nelson Lakes and Abel Tasman National Parks**

Over the duration of this plan, occupiers within the specified areas of land adjoining Mt Richmond Forest Park, Nelson Lakes and Abel Tasman National Parks, must destroy, prior to cone-bearing, any wildings of radiata pine, Douglas fir, lodgepole pine and Scots pine that are present on land that they occupy, to be shown on maps, unless:

- (a) a property-specific Wilding Conifer Control Agreement that specifies a programme for the progressive removal of wilding conifers on the land over a prescribed time period has been signed and agreed between the occupier and the local Council; or
- (b) the occupier has agreed in writing to participate in, or contribute to, a Council-managed or endorsed Local Wilding Conifer Management Plan, Strategy or Programme that specifies a programme or management approach for the progressive removal and/or management of wilding conifers over a prescribed time period and over a defined geographical area that includes the land where the wilding conifers are located.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

#### **Explanation of the Rule**

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of these pests in parts of the region.

**6.5.2 Specific Rule for Taiwan Cherry in north-east Nelson City**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the areas of northern and western Nelson City, as shown on Map 13, must destroy any Taiwan Cherry and its cultivars on their land, at the request of an authorised officer.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the distribution of this pest in the north-eastern areas adjoining Nelson City.

**6.5.3 Rule for Site-led programme at St Arnaud Village**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within the St Arnaud Village area, as shown on Map 14, must destroy, prior to completion of flowering, any of the pests listed in Table 14 that are growing on their land.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the density of these pests to zero in the sites that have been identified.

**6.5.4 Rule for Site-led programme on the south side of Waimea Inlet**

Over the duration of this Plan, occupiers within areas of the Waimea Inlet, as shown on Map 15, must report the presence of any of these pests on their land to Tasman District Council, and allow access to an authorised person to control the pest.

A breach of this rule is an offence under Section 154N(19) the Act.

***Explanation of the Rule***

The purpose of this rule is to reduce the density of these pests to zero in the sites that have been identified.

## 7 Monitoring

### 7.1 Measuring What the Objectives Are Achieving

The following table briefly describes the monitoring that will be undertaken to assess the extent to which the Plan objectives are being met.

**Table 14: Measuring Objectives**

Programme	Anticipated result	Indicator	Monitoring method	Monitoring frequency	Reporting frequency
Exclusion programme pests	No incursions or establishment of listed pests.	Absence from region. Zero density at historic sites.	Surveillance of at-risk sites. Monitoring of known sites. Feedback from occupiers and other persons.	Annual	Annual
Eradication programme pests	Pest populations reducing to zero density within specified areas.	No active sites for these pests within specified areas.	Surveillance of at-risk sites. Monitoring of known sites. Feedback from occupiers and other persons.	Annual	Annual
Progressive Containment	Reductions in pest populations within specified areas.	Reduction in the number of active sites for these pests within specified areas.	Surveillance of at-risk sites. Monitoring of known sites.	Annual	Annual
Sustained Control	<b>Lagarosiphon</b> does not spread into new waterways	Number of infested waterways	Informal monitoring and public feedback	Ongoing	Annual
	Horticultural diseases ( <b>Black spot, Codling moth, European canker, Fireblight, Powdery mildew</b> ) are adequately controlled on land adjoining apple and pear orchards	Feedback from experienced orchardists	Inspection by experienced staff and the use of independent experts when necessary	As required	Annual
	<b>Nassella tussock</b> in the Cape Soucis area, and <b>Broom and Gorse</b> at St Arnaud-Howard, are restricted to their current spatial distribution	Property monitoring	Feedback from occupiers and other persons and inspection by experienced staff	As required	Annual
	Agricultural pests ( <b>Blackberry, Giant buttercup, Nodding thistle, Ragwort</b> ) are restricted to their current spatial distribution	Absent immediately adjacent to boundary fences	Feedback from occupiers and other persons and inspection by experienced staff	As required	Annual
	<b>Sabella</b> (Mediterranean fanworm) does not spread to new locations	Presence in new locations	Feedback from mussel farmers and other persons and inspection by experienced staff	As required	Annual

Protecting Values in Place	Pest animal populations reducing to zero density within specified areas	Numbers of animal pests trapped/killed	Records of animal pests trapped/killed	Weekly / fortnightly / monthly	Annual
	Pest plant populations reducing to zero density within specified areas	No active sites of these pests within specified areas.	Surveillance and monitoring of known sites. Feedback from occupiers and other persons.	Annual	Annual

## 7.2 Monitoring the Management Agency's Performance

Tasman District Council is the Management Agency. As the Management Agency responsible for implementing the Plan, it will:

- (a) prepare an annual operational plan within 3 months of the Plan being approved;
- (b) review the annual operational plan, and amend it when necessary;
- (c) report on the annual operational plan each year, within 5 months of the end of each financial year;
- (d) record complaints and actions taken in the Service Request Database; and
- (e) maintain a pest database to record the location of pests and relevant information on their density, distribution, treatment and interactions with occupiers.

## 7.3 Monitoring Plan Effectiveness

Monitoring the effectiveness of the Plan will ensure that it continues to achieve its purpose. It will also indicate whether circumstances have changed to such an extent that part or all of the Plan should be reviewed. A review may be needed if:

- (a) legislation is changed, and a review is needed to ensure that the Plan is not inconsistent with the Act;
- (b) other harmful organisms are creating, or have the potential to create, problems that can be resolved by including those organisms in the Plan;
- (c) monitoring shows the problems arising from pests or other organisms to be controlled (as covered by the Plan) have changed significantly; or
- (d) circumstances change so significantly that the Councils believe a review is appropriate.

If the Plan does not need to be reviewed under such circumstances, it can be reviewed in line with Section 100D of the Act. Such a review may extend, amend or revoke the Plan, or leave it unchanged.

The procedures to review the Plan will be prepared by Tasman District Council staff, in consultation with Nelson City Council staff, to:

**Item 8.4**

- (a) assess the efficiency and effectiveness of the principal measures (specified for each pest/organism or group of pests/organisms) to be controlled to achieve the objectives of the Plan;
- (b) assess the impact of the pest/organism (in the Plan) on the region and any other harmful organisms that should be considered for inclusion in the Plan; and
- (c) liaise with key stakeholders and interest groups on the effectiveness of the Plan.

**Attachment 1**



## Part Three – Procedures

### 8 Powers Conferred

#### 8.1 Powers under Part 6 of the Act

The Principal Officer (Chief Executive) of Tasman District Council may appoint authorised persons to exercise the functions, powers and duties under the Act in relation to a Regional Pest Management Plan.

Those statutory powers in Part 6 of the Act, as shown in Table 15, will be used as and when necessary to implement this Plan.

**Table 15: Powers from Part 6 of the Biosecurity Act to be used**

Administrative Provisions	Biosecurity Act Reference
The appointment of authorised and accredited persons	Section 103(3) & (7)
Delegation to authorised persons	Section 105
Power to require assistance	Section 106
Power of inspections and duties	Section 109, 110 & 112
Power to record information.	Section 113
General powers	Section 114 & 114A
Use of dogs and devices	Section 115
Power to intercept risk goods	Section 120
Power to examine organisms	Section 121
Power to give directions	Section 122
Power to act on default	Section 128
Liens	Section 129
Declaration of restricted areas	Section 130
Declaration of controlled areas	Section 131
Options for cost recovery	Section 135
Failure to pay	Section 136
Offences	Section 154N

Tasman District Council, as the Management Agency, will use the Biosecurity Act Enforcement Manual, which contains standard operating procedures and guidelines. It was prepared by P. Russell and K. de Silva for use by regional councils and unitary authorities throughout New Zealand.

## **8.2 Powers under Other Sections of the Act**

An occupier or any person in breach of a plan rule creates an offence under Section 154N(19) of the Act where the rule provides for this. Tasman District Council can seek prosecution under Section 157(5) of the Act for those offences.

A Chief Technical Officer (employed under the State Sector Act 1988) may appoint authorised people to implement other biosecurity legislation that is considered necessary. One example is where restrictions on selling, propagating and distributing pests (under Sections 52 and 53 of the Act) must be enforced. Another example is where occupiers of land are asked for information (under Section 43 of the Act).

## **8.3 Power to Issue Exemptions to Plan Rules**

Any occupier or other person may write to Tasman District Council to seek an exemption from any provision of a plan rule set out in Part Two of the Regional Pest Management Plan. However, a rule may state that no exemptions will be considered, or it may limit the circumstances to which exemptions apply (e.g. scientific purposes).

The requirements in Section 98 of the Act must be met for a person to be granted an exemption. Tasman District Council's operating procedures will note those requirements. Tasman District Council will keep and maintain a register that records the number and nature of exemptions granted. The public will be able to inspect this register during business hours.

## **9 Funding**

### **9.1 Introduction**

The Act requires that funding is thoroughly examined. For a Proposed Plan, this includes:

- (a) analysing the costs and benefits of the plan and any reasonable alternative measures;
- (b) noting how much any person will likely benefit from the plan;
- (c) noting how any person's actions or inactions may contribute to creating, continuing or worsening the problems that the plan proposes to resolve;
- (d) noting the reason for allocating costs; and
- (e) noting whether any unusual administrative problems or costs are expected in recovering the costs from any person who is required to pay.

### **9.2 Analysis of Benefits and Costs**

An analysis was undertaken (Appendix 3) to determine the level of qualitative analysis required for the analysis of pests to be considered for inclusion in regional pest management plans, using criteria listed in the *National Policy Direction for Pest Management (MPI, 2015)*. This is summarised in a table in Appendix 3. The conclusion was that a qualitative approach could be used. This is contained in a supporting document (CBA Qualitative Analysis Notes) and it is summarised in Appendix 4.

### **9.3 Beneficiaries and Exacerbators**

The following table (Table 16) lists those who benefit from pests being controlled (beneficiaries) and those who contribute to the pest problem (exacerbators). A more detailed analysis is included in Appendix 2 for groups of pests.

**Table 16: A Summary of the Beneficiaries and Exacerbators**

Beneficiaries	Exacerbators
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regional producers who will benefit from the protection of economic value</li> <li>• Neighbours who will benefit from being pest-free or having reduced levels of pest pressure</li> <li>• Regional community including Crown agencies who will benefit from being pest-free or having reduced levels of pest pressure</li> <li>• Regional community who will benefit from having recreational and conservation values protected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Occupiers who do not report or control pests</li> <li>• Occupiers/contractors who dump material containing pests</li> <li>• People whose actions bring new pests into the region</li> <li>• People who allow established pests to spread to new locations within the region</li> </ul>

#### **9.4 Funding Sources and Reasons for Funding**

The Biosecurity Act 1993 and the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 require that funding is sought from:

- (a) people who have an interest in the Plan;
- (b) those who benefit from the Plan; and
- (c) those who contribute to the pest problem.

Funding must be sought in a way that reflects economic efficiency and equity. As occupiers are both exacerbators and beneficiaries to varying degrees, it is proposed that implementation of this Plan be funded principally from the general rate levied on individual rateable properties in the Tasman-Nelson region by the two councils. It is considered that this is the most appropriate method of charging ratepayers for the services provided by the Regional Pest Management Plan.

#### **9.5 Anticipated Costs of Implementing the Plan**

The anticipated costs of implementing the Proposed Regional Pest Management Plan reflect current estimates of expenditure. Plan funding for each council will continue to be examined and set during their Long Term Plan and Annual Plan processes.

The funding of the implementation of the Proposed Plan is from a general rate, set and assessed under the Local Government (Rating) Act 2002 by each of the councils. In determining this, the councils have had regard to those matters outlined in Section 100T of the Biosecurity Act.

**Table 17: Proposed RPMP Expenditure for 2017-2018**

<b>Pest Programme</b>	<b>Annual Budget (\$K)</b>
Exclusion	\$60.0
Eradication	\$160.0
Progressive containment	\$120.0
Sustained control	\$140.0
Site-led	\$50.0
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$530.0</b>

**Notes:**

- 1 Additional funding has been set aside for the Biocontrol agents (\$30K) and for the TOS Marine Biosecurity Partnership (\$40K).
- 2 Funding for work on pest fish and on Spartina is provided by the Department of Conservation.
- 3 External funding from philanthropic sources and voluntary efforts are both making a substantial contribution to programmes involving biodiversity pests.

## Glossary

**Abandoned** means, in relation to any kiwifruit orchard or former orchard vines, fruit has not been picked or removed from vines by 1 July yearly; vines have not been pruned and tied down by 1 October yearly; and a crop protection product, approved by Kiwifruit Vine Health, has not been applied to vines within 12 months.

- **Animal** is any mammal, insect, bird or fish, including invertebrates, and any living organism except a plant or human.

- **Authorised person** is a person who is appointed an authorised person under section 103 of the Biosecurity Act.

- **Beneficiary** is the receiver of benefits accruing from the implementation of a pest management measure or strategy.

- **Biocontrol** (Biological control) is the use of natural enemies that will attack pests without harming other species.

**Biodiversity** (Biological Diversity) is the variability among living organisms from all sources including inter alia, terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are a part; this includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems.

- **Chief Technical Officer** is a person who has been appointed a chief technical officer under Section 101 of the Biosecurity Act.

- **Control** means to limit or decrease the extent or density of a plant or animal population by an approved method, or to stop the growth and/or spread of a plant or animal by an approved physical, mechanical, chemical or biological method.

**Costs and benefits** includes costs and benefits of any kind, whether monetary or nonmonetary.

- **Crown agencies** includes any government organisation e.g. the Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation, Land Information New Zealand.

- **Crown land** is land vested in the Crown and administered by a Minister, and includes all land forming part of any national park, any reserve within the meaning of the Reserves Act 1977, and all unoccupied lands of the Crown.

- **Destroy** means to immediately kill an animal or extinguish all growth of a plant.

- **Direction** means a notice issued in accordance with Section 122 of the Biosecurity Act 1993 requesting a person, owner or occupier to carry out certain work or measures.

- **Distribute** means to propagate, offer for sale or sell, barter, transport, or in any way aid in the spread of a pest.

- **Enforce** means to compel observance with the law.

**Environment** includes ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and their communities, all natural and physical resources, amenity values, and the aesthetic, cultural, economic and social conditions affected by any of the above.

- **Eradicate** means, in relation to an organism, to completely remove it from part or all of the region.

- 

**Eradication pest programme** is the programme intended to eradicate specified pests from part or all of the region. These are pest plants of limited distribution or density in the region or part of the region.

- **Exacerbator** is a person, who by their activities or inaction, contributes to the creation, continuance or aggravation of a pest plant management problem.

- 

**Exclusion pest programme** is the programme that is intended to prevent the establishment of specified pests that are present in New Zealand but not yet established in the region.

- **Feral** is a term applied to animals (excluding cats) that have reverted to a wild state from domestication and are free-ranging.

- 

- **Feral cats** are cats that are born to feral or stray cats and live without direct or indirect assistance from humans and avoid human contact.

- 

- **Forest plantation** is an area of 1 hectare or more of planted **trees**

**Indigenous** is a term applied to organisms that are within their natural range (past or present) and dispersal potential.

**Introduced** is a terms applied to organisms brought from their natural range to New Zealand by a human agency.

**Kiwifruit** means any plant of the genus *Actinidia*.

- **Monitoring** means to observe, measure and record the population levels and trends of a particular pest population.

- 

**Mustelid** means any member of the genus *Mustela* – specifically stoats, ferrets, and weasels.

- **Occupier:**

- (a) In relation to any place physically occupied by any person, means that person; and

- (b) In relation to any other place, means the owner of the place; and

- (c) In relation to any place, includes any agent, employee, or other person, acting or apparently acting in the general management or control of the place.

- 

- **Pest** is an organism specified as a pest in a pest management plan but excludes dead plants or animals.

**Pest fish** - Freshwater pest fish listed in the plan (ie, Gambusia, koi carp, perch, rudd, tench).

**Pipfruit orchard** is an area of land used for the production of apples and pears that contains a minimum of 50 apple or pear trees.

**Plant** is any plant, tree, shrub, herb, flower, nursery stock, culture, vegetable, or other vegetation. It includes any fruit, seed, spore and portion or product of any plant and all aquatic plants.

- **Principal Officer** means, in relation to a regional council, its chief executive, and in relation to a region, the chief executive of the region's regional council.

- **Progressive containment programme** is the pest management programme intended to contain and reduce the geographic distribution of the specified pests to an area over time.

- **Propagate** means to multiply or produce by sowing, grafting, breeding or any other way.

- **Road** is defined in Section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes the land contained within the legal boundaries. A formed road is one that has a formed carriageway and is under the control of and maintained by a road controlling authority. An unformed road is one that is not under the control of, or maintained by, a road controlling authority, whether or not it has a formed carriageway.

- **Road reserves** means all formed roads (including road verges) from the centre of the road to an abutting property boundary and includes all bridges, culverts and fords forming part of any road, but does not include unformed (paper) roads.

- **RPMP** means Regional Pest Management Plan.

- **Rule** is a rule included in a pest management plan in accordance with section 73(5) of the Act.

- **Sell** includes barter; and also includes offering, exposing, or attempting to sell, or having in possession for sale, or sending or delivery for sale, causing or allowing to be sold, offered, or exposed for sale.

- **Site-led programme** is a programme that focuses on protecting certain values at certain sites by controlling specified pests.

**Stakeholders** are the beneficiaries and exacerbators identified in this Plan who are bound by, and contribute to, the Plan.

**Surveillance** is surveying areas to establish the absence, presence or extent of pests.

**Sustained control programme** is the programme that is intended to provide for the sustained control of the specified pests in an area.

**Unmanaged kiwifruit** are kiwifruit plants or plant material not managed to Kiwifruit Vine Health's National Psa-V Pest Management Plan requirements.

**Unwanted Organism** - organisms that have been declared as unwanted by Chief Technical Officers of government departments with biosecurity interests. These are listed in a Register on the MPI website that also contains organisms whose importation has been declined by the Environmental Protection Authority (EPA), and organisms listed in the second schedule of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996. Unwanted organisms are prohibited from sale, propagation and distribution, in accordance with Sections 52 and 53 of the Biosecurity Act.

**Vector** is any organism or thing which carries another organism into an area, or onto or into another host.

**Wild kiwifruit** means any unmanaged plant material, self-propagated or abandoned plant of the *Actinidia* genus on private or public land.

**Wilding conifers\*** (wildings) are any introduced conifer tree established by natural means, unless it is located within a forest plantation and does not create any greater risk of wilding conifer spread to adjacent or nearby land than the forest plantation that surrounds it.



**Zero density** is a term used when there are no known live animals or plants remaining of the pest species of concern at the end of annual pest control operations in the area of concern. It is used when there is a risk of re-infestation e.g. from viable dormant seed. It has a status slightly lower than eradication and recognises potential imperfections in surveillance, monitoring and detection.

\* Wilding conifers are introduced conifers that have mainly established naturally as a result of natural seed spread. This process has been exacerbated by occupiers failing to take action when wilding conifers first occur, and much of the ongoing wilding conifer spread in New Zealand is generated from existing areas of reproducing wilding conifers. Much of the initial wilding conifer spread originated from a range of sources, particularly historic or 'legacy' plantings, such as Crown plantings for erosion control and research; long-established shelterbelts and amenity plantings on private and pastoral lease land; and in some locations, from woodlots and forest plantations.

Wilding conifers are produced by many different introduced conifer species. Ten conifer species are recognised as currently contributing most to the wilding conifer problem in New Zealand. While some of these species have little or no commercial value and are no longer planted, or much less frequently planted than in the past, several of these species, particularly Radiata pine (*Pinus radiata*) and Douglas fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*), are valuable commercial species that contribute significantly to forestry exports.

## References

Biosecurity Act 1993. NZ Government.

Ministry of Primary Industries (2014). The right tree in the right place: New Zealand Wilding Conifer Management Strategy 2015- 2030.

Ministry of Primary Industries (2015). Meeting the requirements of the National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015.

National Policy Direction for Pest Management (2015). NZ Government.  
Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest Management Strategy 2012-2017. Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council (2012).

## Appendices

### Appendix 1: Maps

- Map 1 Boneseed in Tasman-Nelson excluding the Port Hills
- Map 2 Feral rabbits in Golden Bay excluding Awaroa
- Map 3 Banana Passion Vine in the Golden Bay – Riwaka and U. Buller areas
- Map 4 Climbing Asparagus in eastern Golden Bay
- Map 5 Nassella Tussock in Tasman-Nelson excluding Cape Soucis
- Map 6 Old Man's Beard in the Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri area and Upper Buller
- Map 7 Wild Ginger in the Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri area
- Map 8 Broom in the Howard-St Arnaud area
- Map 9 Feral rabbits in the Tasman-Nelson region excluding Golden Bay but including Awaroa
- Map 10 Gorse in the Howard-St Arnaud area
- Map 11 Nassella Tussock in the Cape Soucis area
- Map 12 Yellow Bristle Grass in Golden Bay and the Upper Buller areas
- Map 13 Taiwan Cherry in northern and eastern Nelson City
- Map 14 St-Arnaud Village area covered by the Site-led programme
- Map 15 Areas adjoining Waimea Inlet (south side) covered by the Site-led programme

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

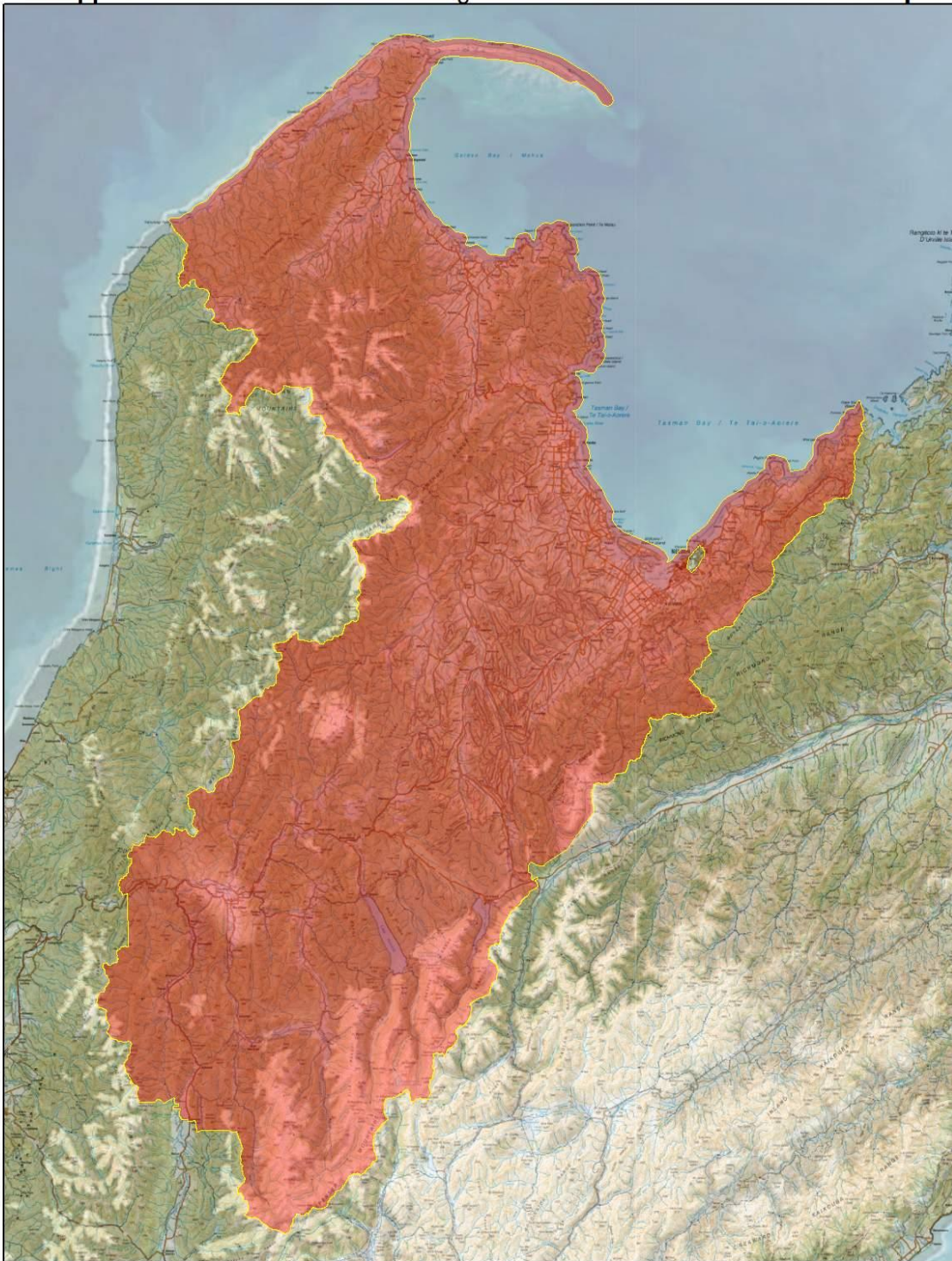
## Eradication Programme



Boneseed Eradication Area

Rule applies to: Tasman-Nelson excluding Port Hills

# PROPOSED



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

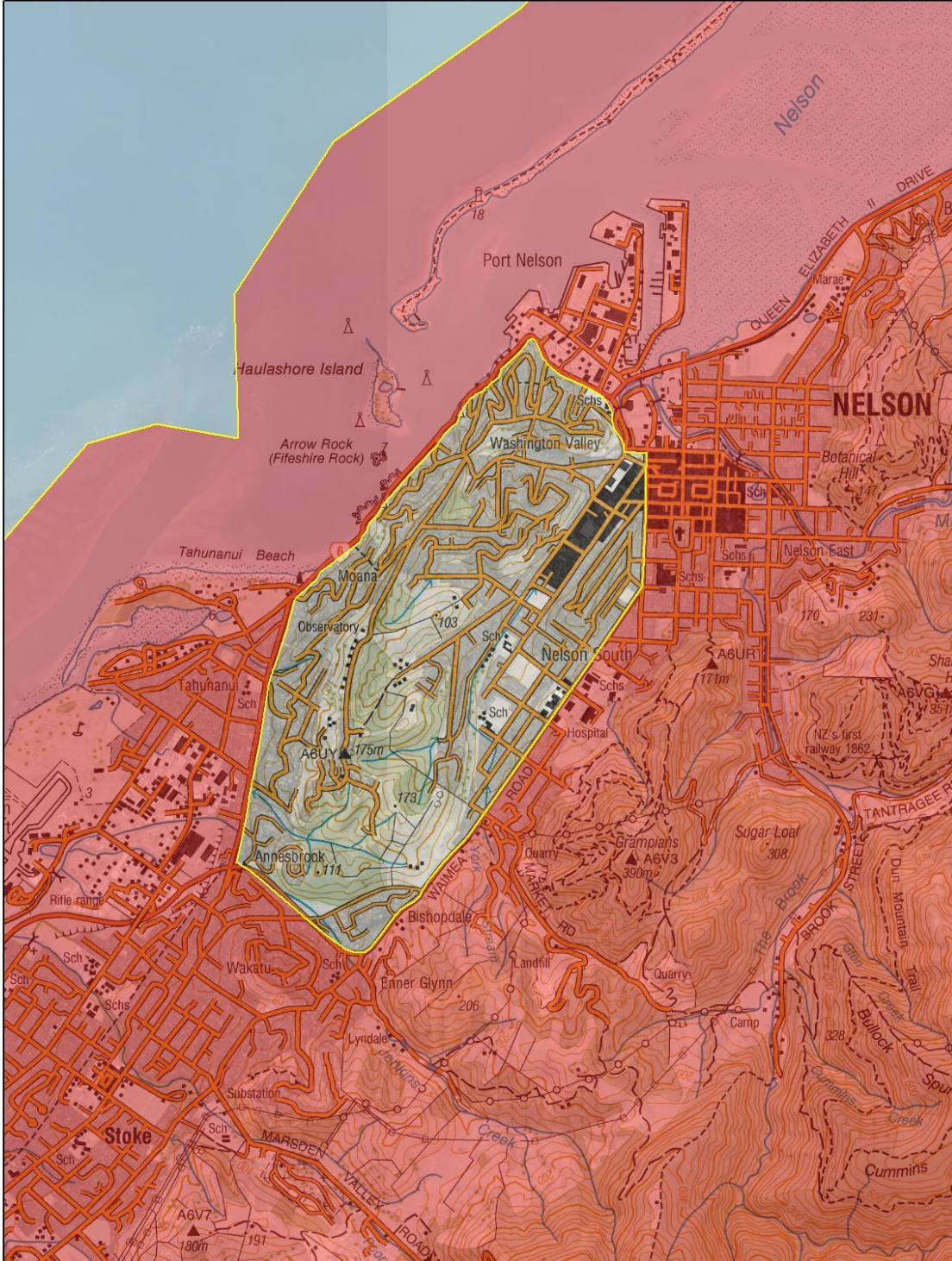
### Regional Pest Management Strategy



 Boneseed Eradication Area

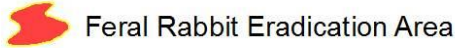
Rule applies to: Tasman-Nelson excluding Port Hills

**PROPOSED** **Inset Map 1.1**



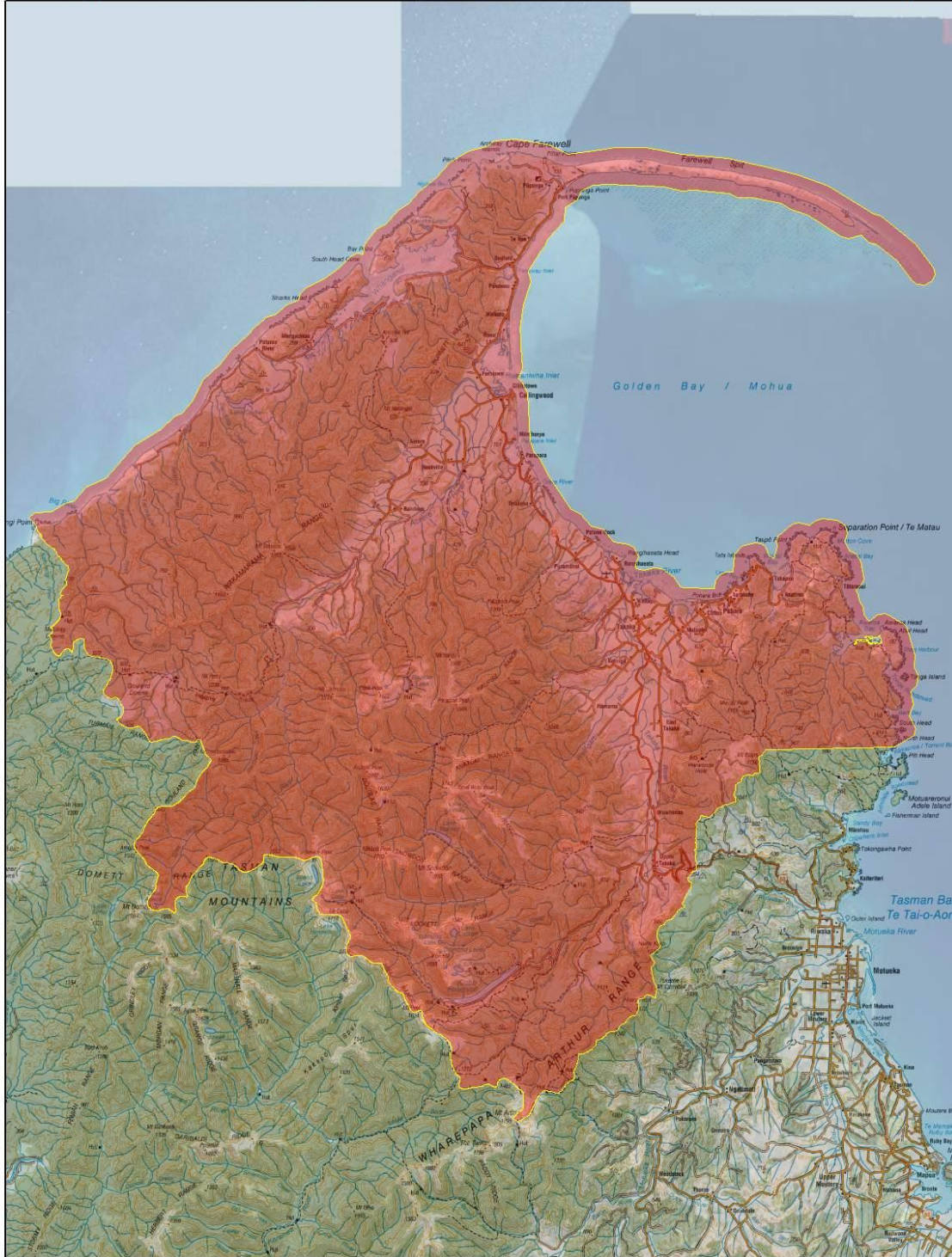
NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas\_InsetMaps.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy Eradication Programme



Rule applies to: Golden Bay excluding Awaroa

PROPOSED



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

### Regional Pest Management Strategy



 Feral Rabbit Eradication Area

**PROPOSED**  **Inset Map 2.1**

**Rule applies to: Golden Bay excluding Awaroa**



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas\_InsetMaps.mxd

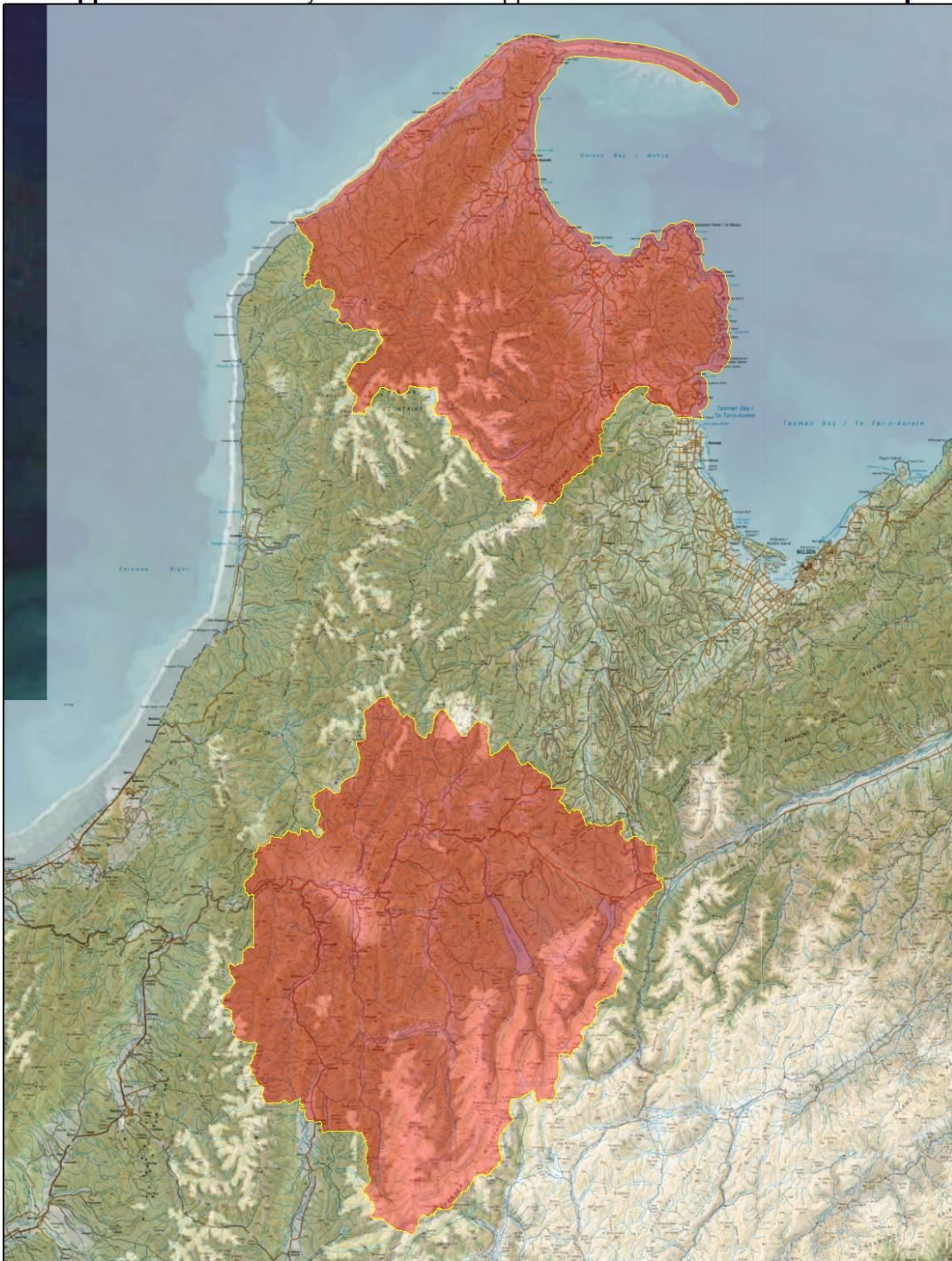
# Regional Pest Management Strategy

## Progressive Containment Programme



Banana Passion Vine Progressive Containment Area

Rule applies to: Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri and Upper Buller



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd



**Regional Pest Management Strategy**  
Progressive Containment Programme

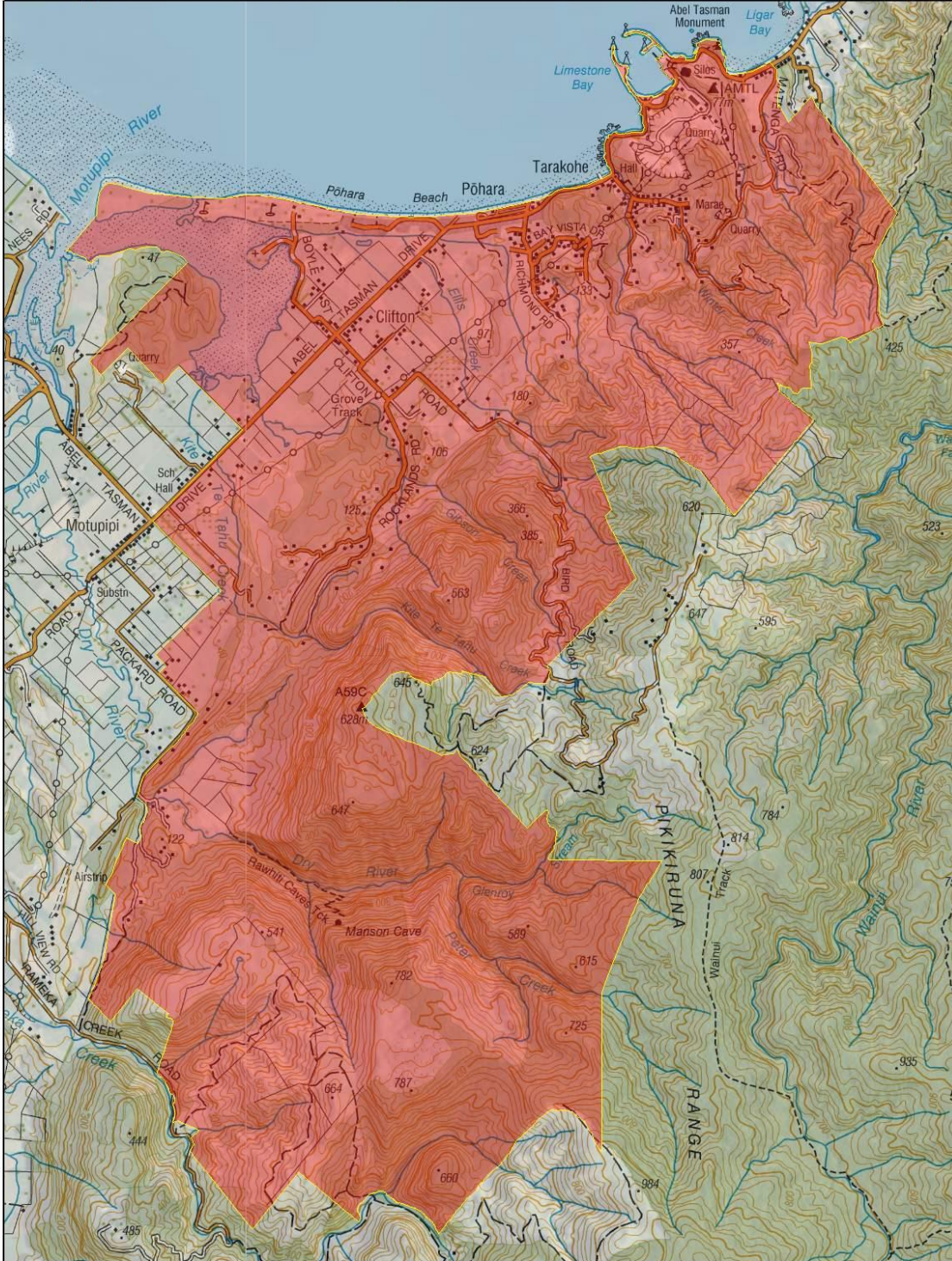


Climbing Asparagus Progressive Containment Area

Rule applies to: Eastern Golden Bay

PROPOSED

Map 4



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

### Regional Pest Management Strategy

Progressive Containment Programme

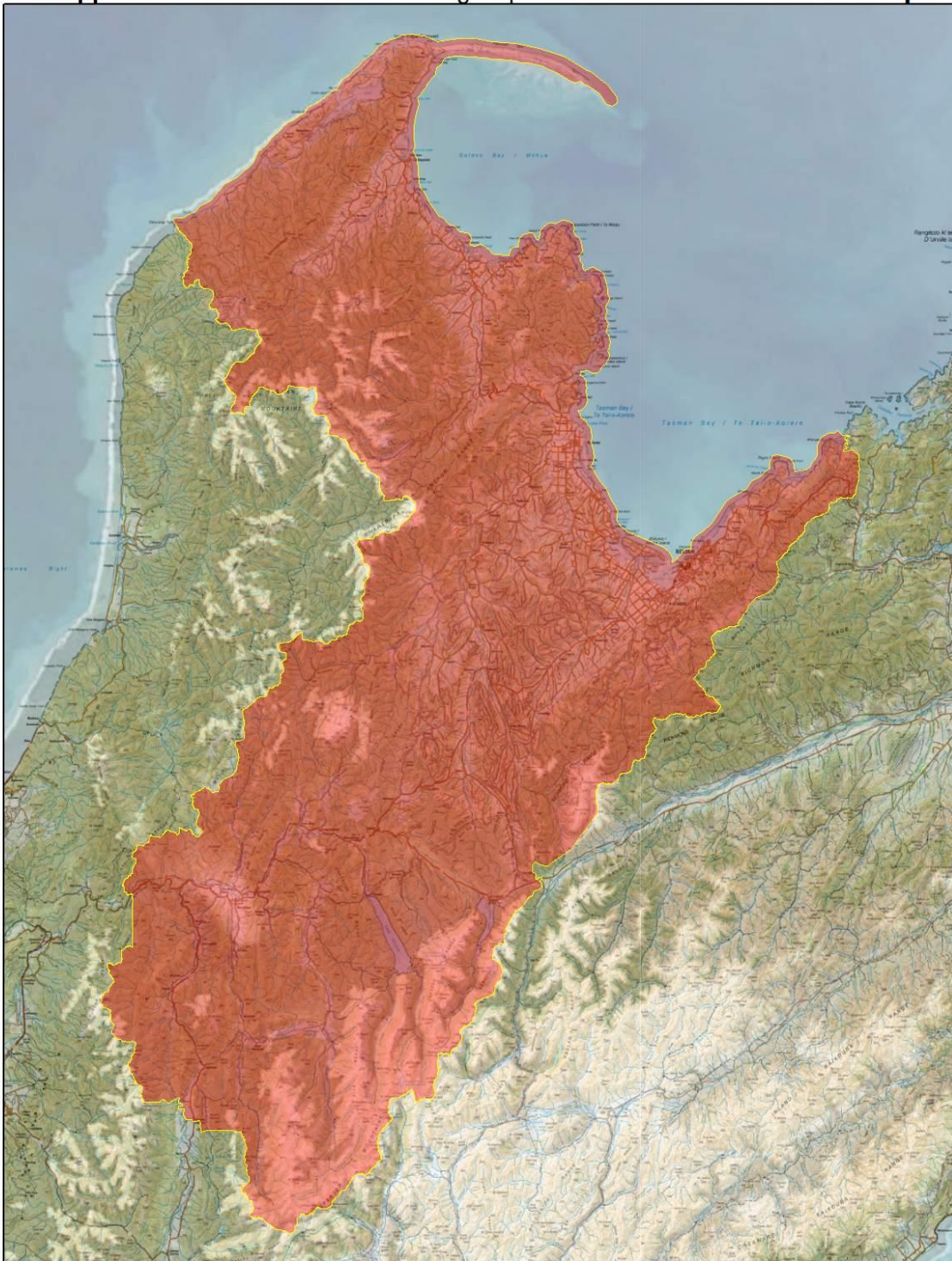


Nassella Tussock Progressive Containment Area

Rule applies to: Tasman-Nelson excluding Cape Soucis



PROPOSED



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

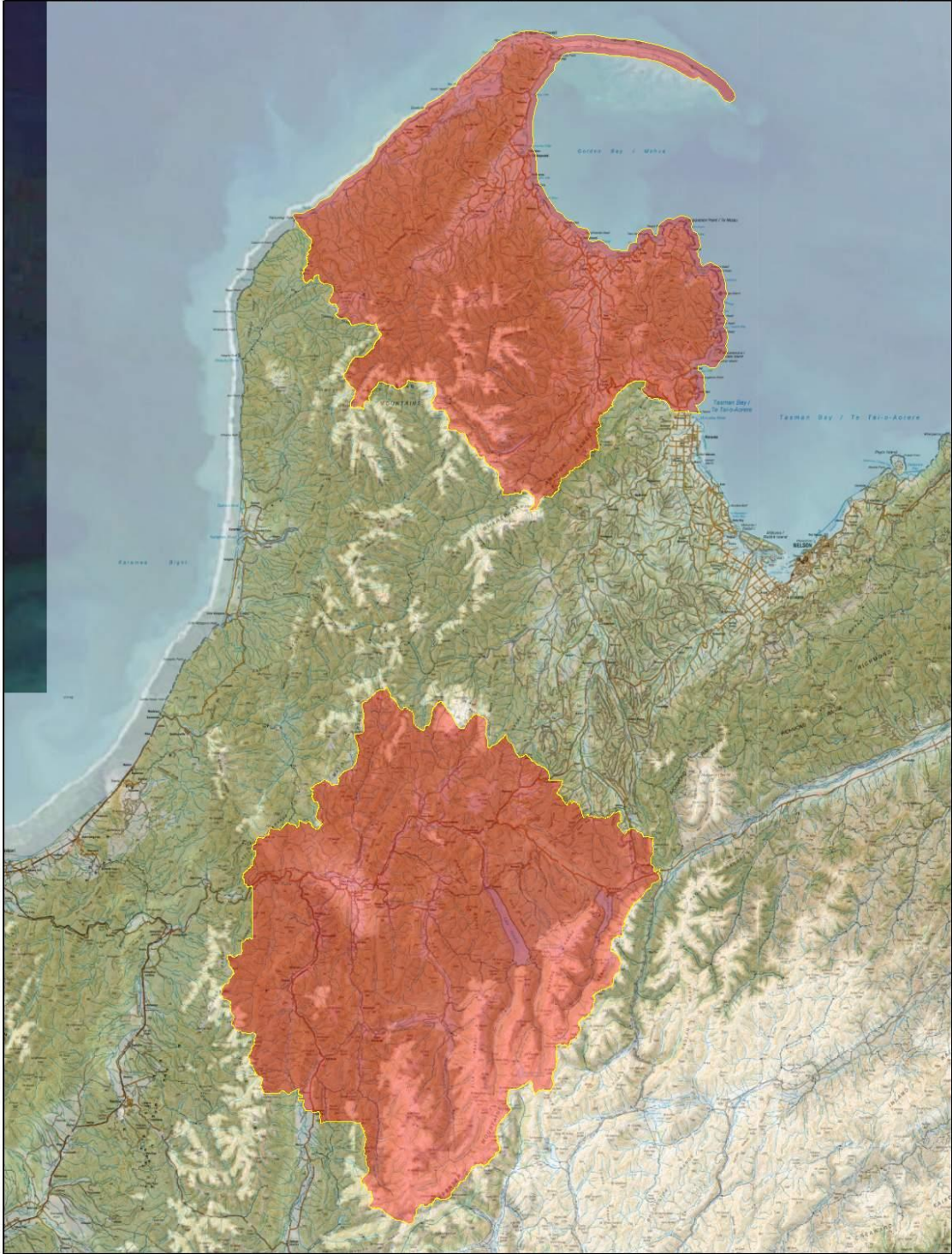
**Regional Pest Management Strategy**  
Progressive Containment Programme



Old Mans Beard Progressive Containment Area

**Rule applies to:** Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri and Upper Buller

PROPOSED



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

## Progressive Containment Programme



Wild Ginger Progressive Containment Area

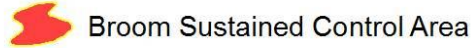
Rule applies to: Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri

PROPOSED



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

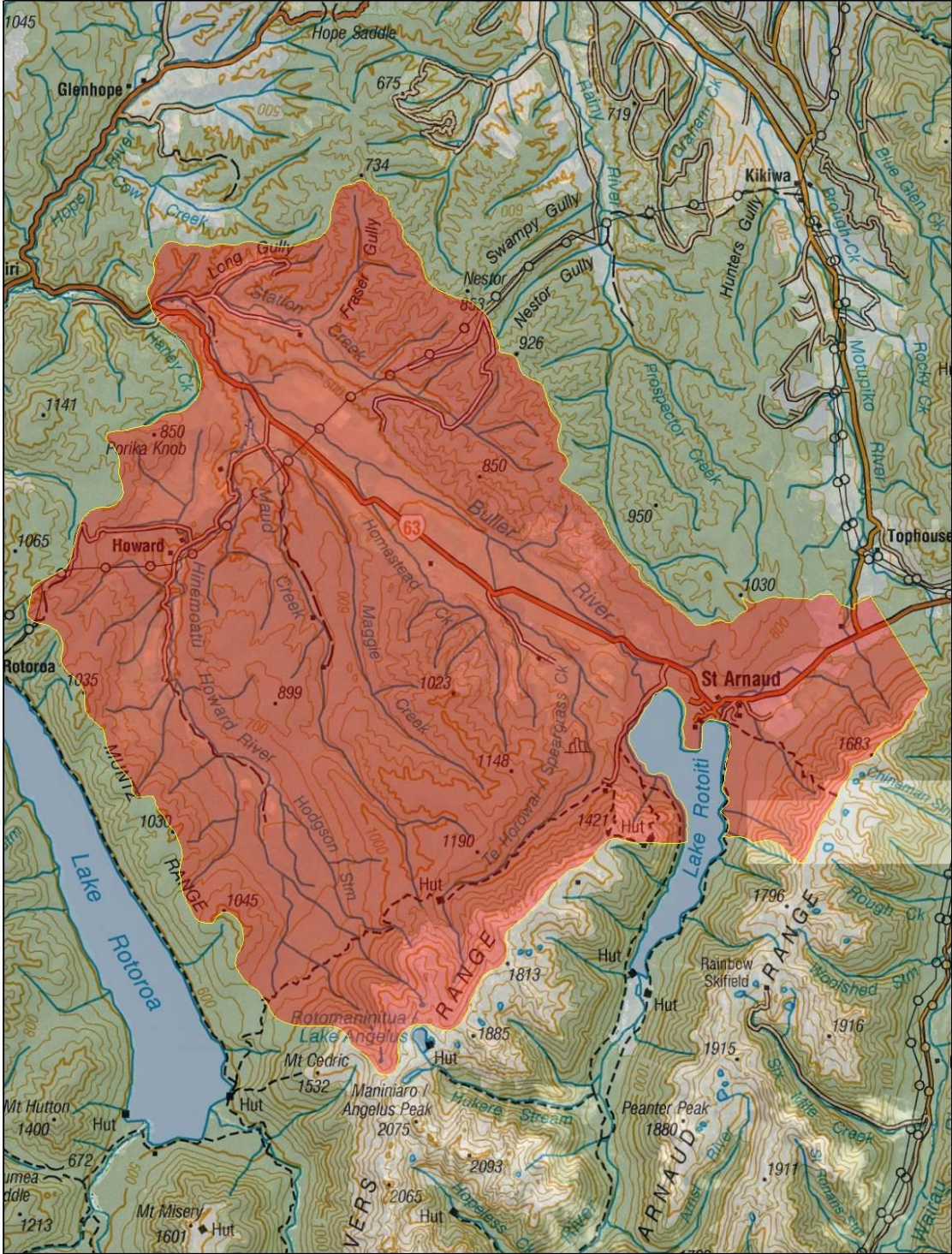
Regional Pest Management Strategy  
Sustained Control Programme



Rule applies to: Howard-St Arnaud

PROPOSED

Map 8



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

### Regional Pest Management Strategy

Sustained Control Programme



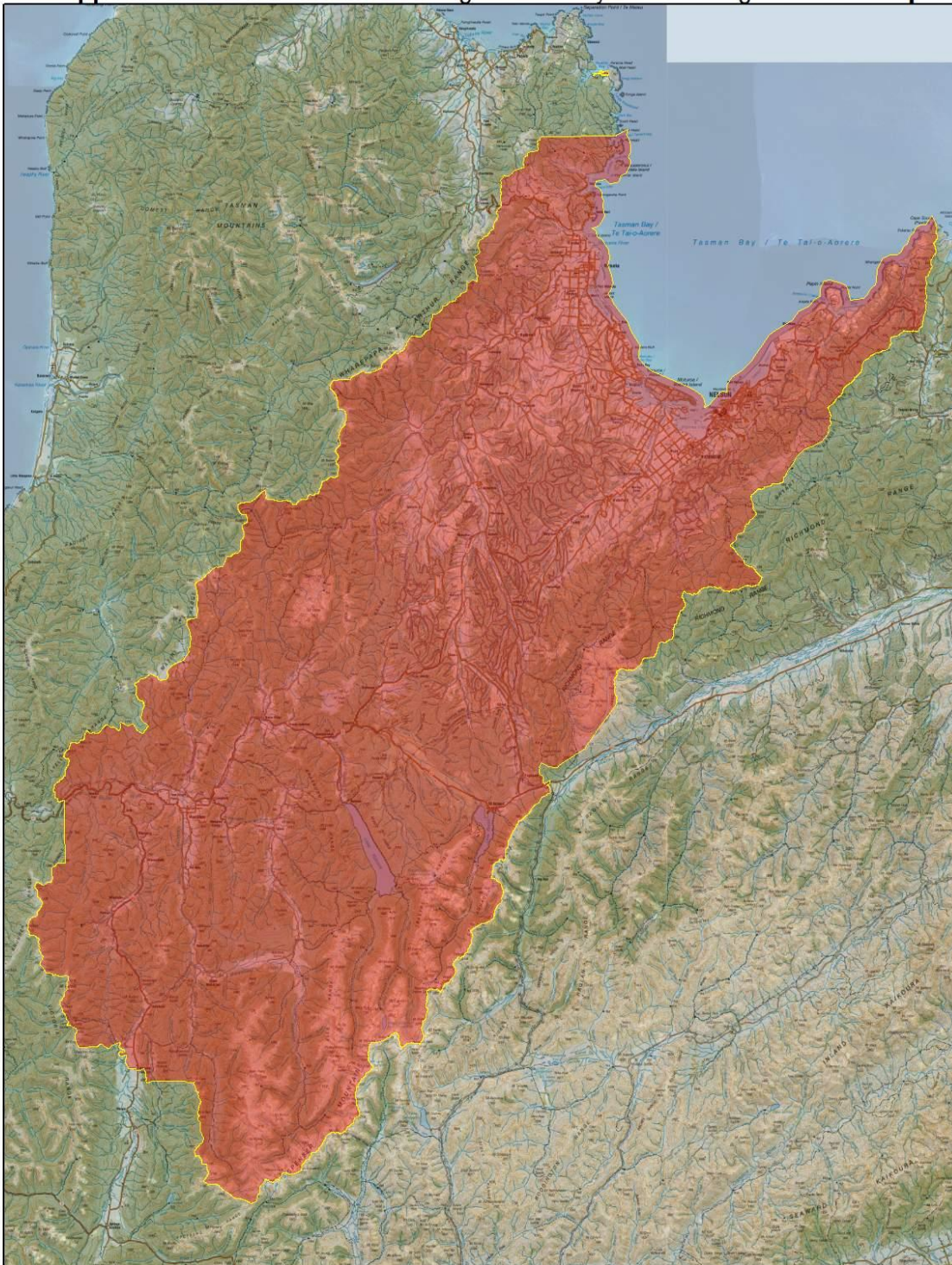
Feral Rabbit Sustained Control Area

**PROPOSED**



Rule applies to: Tasman-Nelson excluding Golden Bay but including Awaroa

Map 9



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy



Feral Rabbit Sustained Control Area



Inset Map

9.1

Rule applies to: Tasman-Nelson excluding Golden Bay but including Awaroa



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas\_InsetMaps.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

Sustained Control Programme

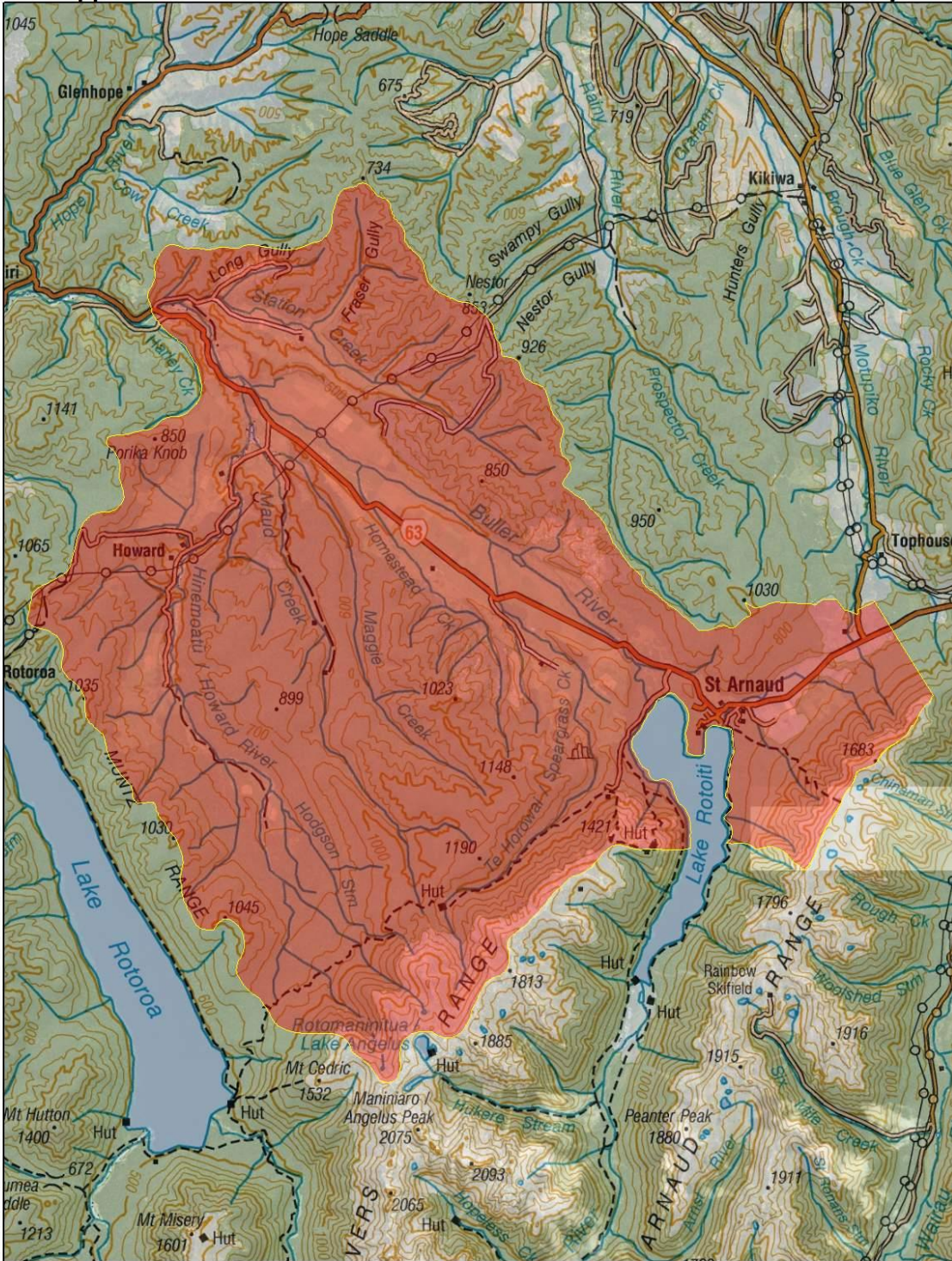


 Gorse Sustained Control Area

Rule applies to: Howard-St Arnaud

PROPOSED

Map 10



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd



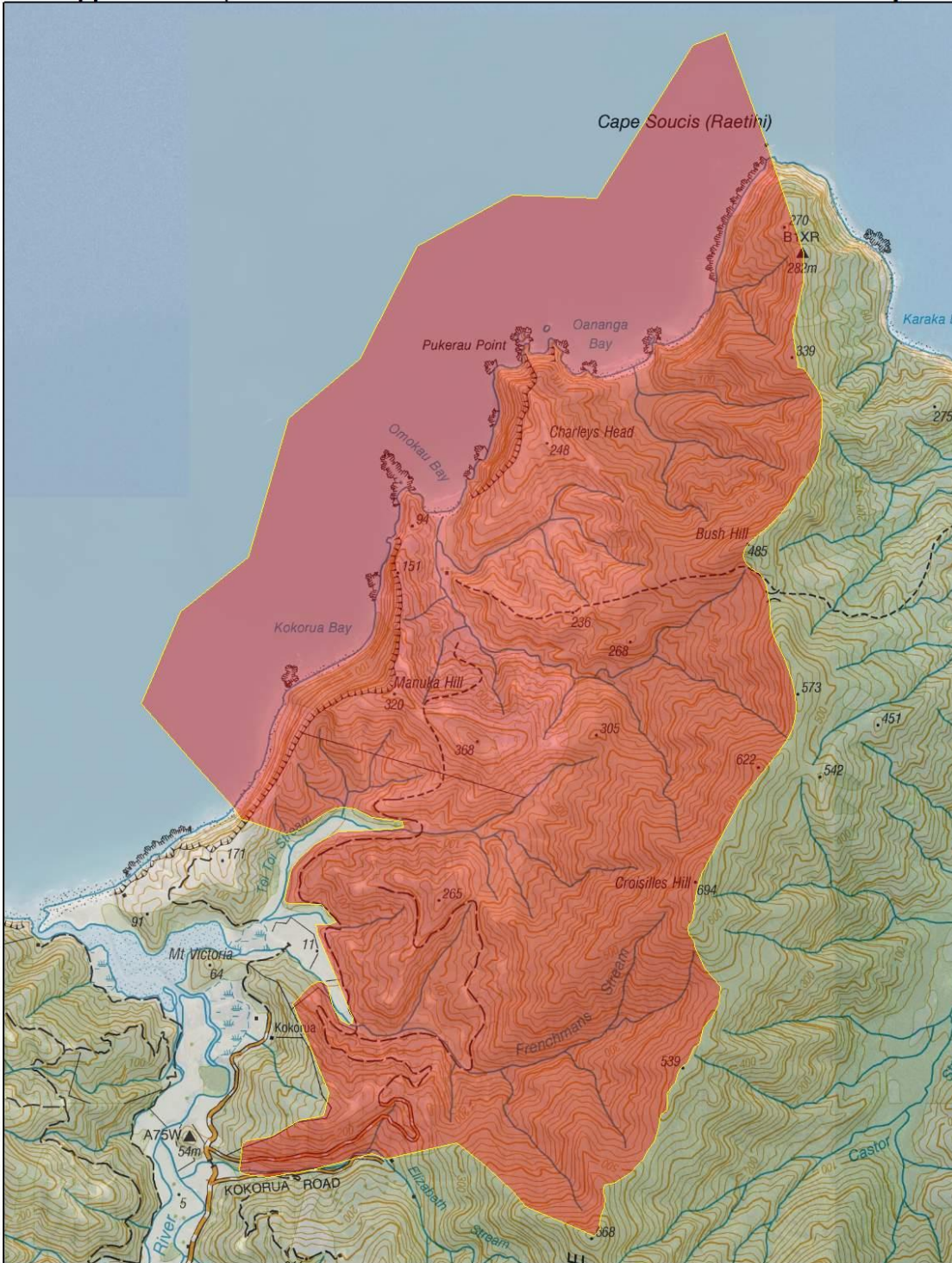
**Regional Pest Management Strategy**  
Sustained Control Programme



 Nassella Tussock Sustained Control Area

**Rule applies to: Cape Soucis**

**PROPOSED**  **Map 11**



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

Sustained Control Programme

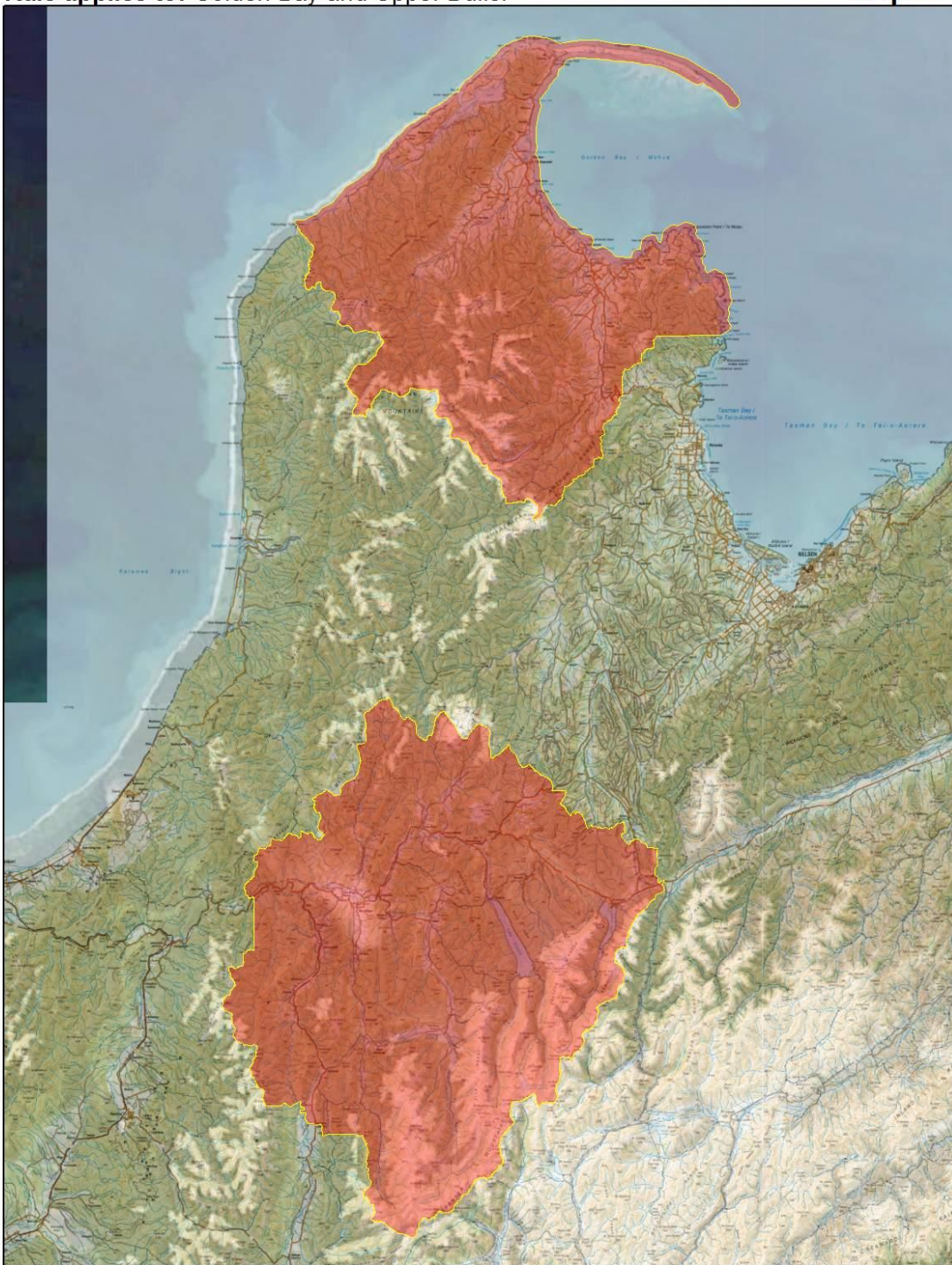


Yellow Bristle Grass Sustained Control Area

Rule applies to: Golden Bay and Upper Buller

PROPOSED

Map 12



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

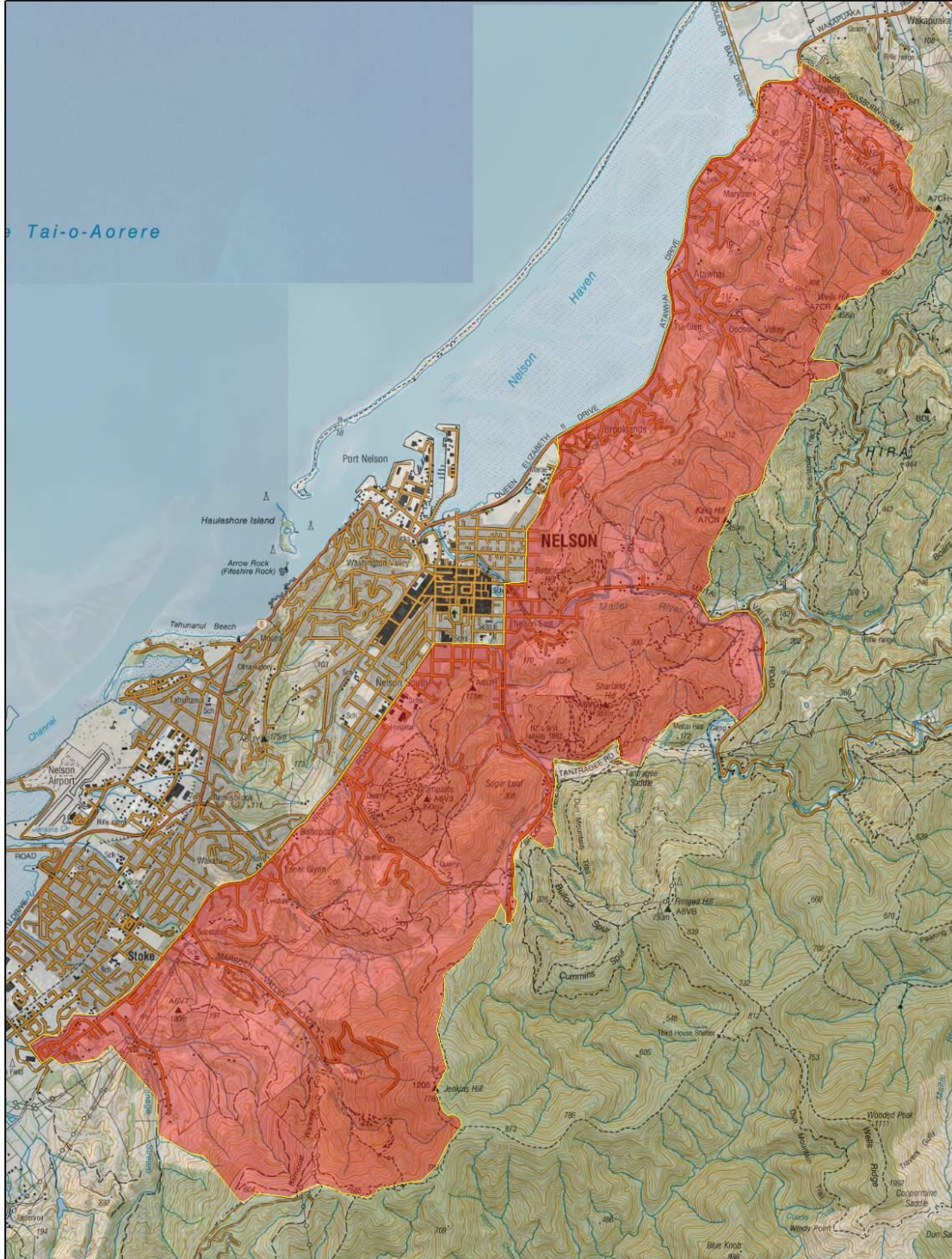
Site-led Programme



 Taiwan Cherry Site-led Area

**Rule applies to:** Northern and Eastern Nelson City

**PROPOSED**  **Map 13**



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BIO\Security\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

## Site-led Programme



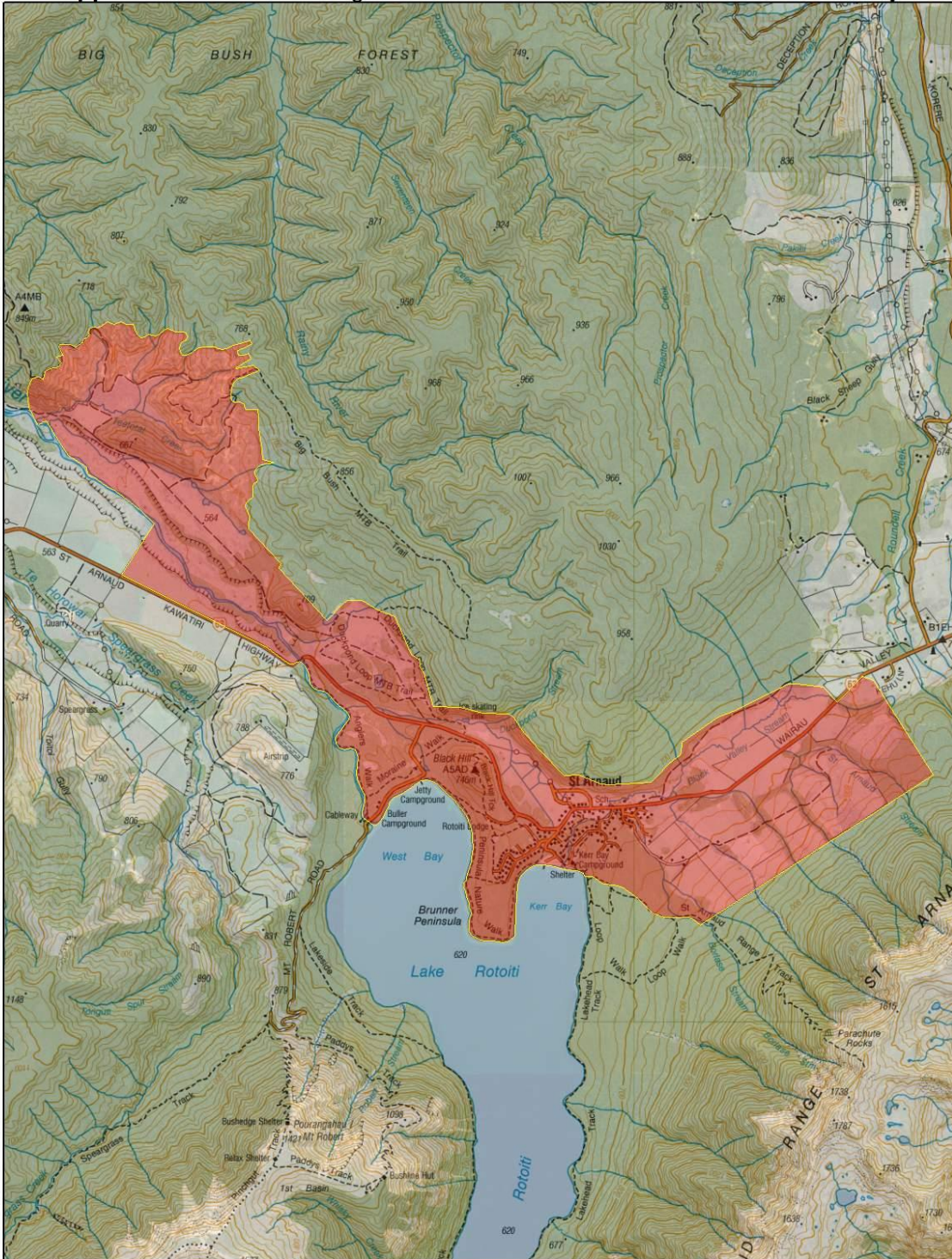
Various Pests Site-led Area



# PROPOSED

Map 14

Rule applies to: St Arnaud Village



NZTopo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BioSecurity\PestManagement\Regional\PestManagementStrategy\2018-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

# Regional Pest Management Strategy

Site-led Programme

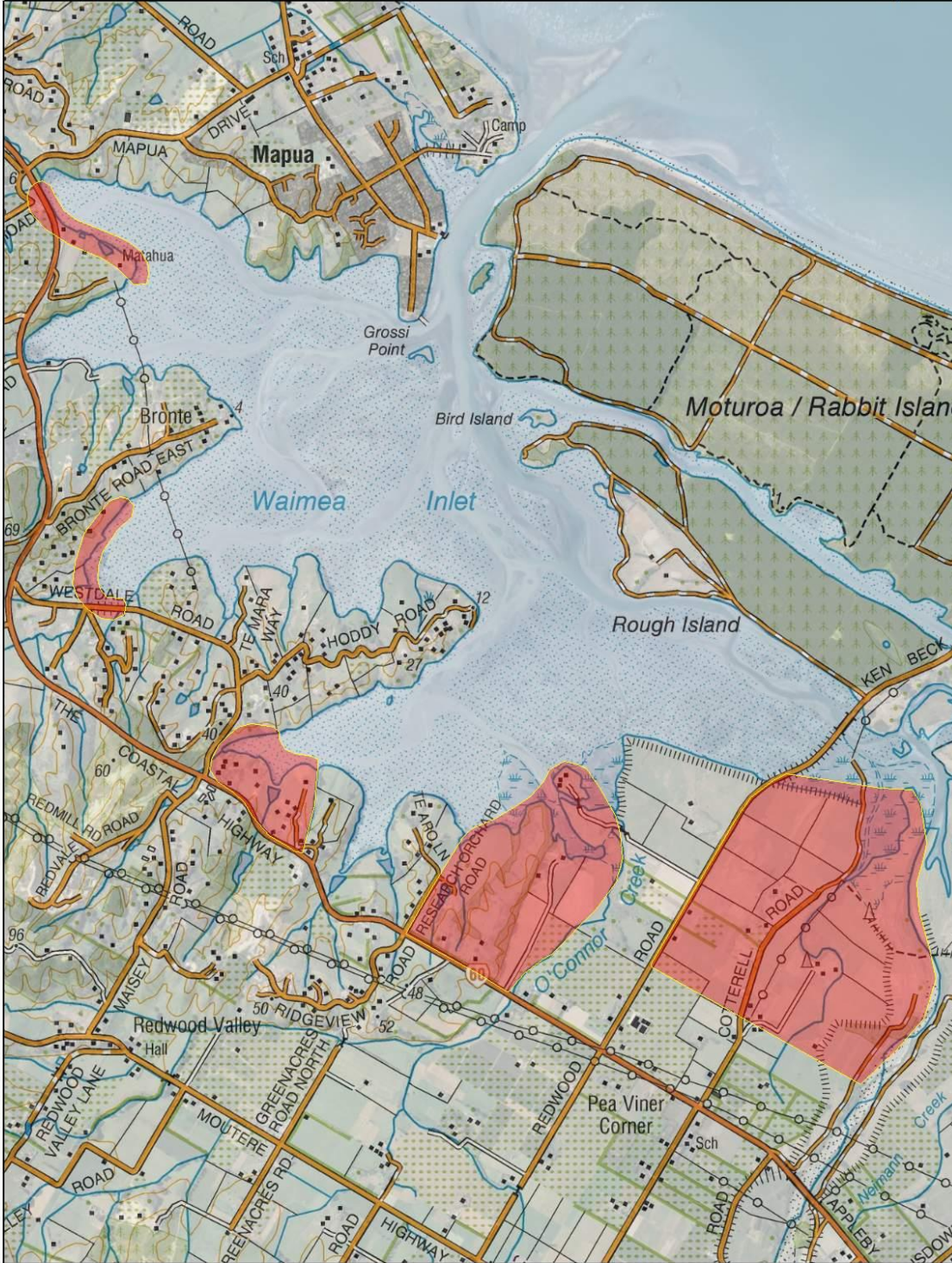


 Various Pests Site-led Area

Rule applies to: Waimea Inlet (marked areas)

**PROPOSED**

Map 15



NZ Topo sourced from LINZ. Crown Copyright reserved. Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. The information on this map is prepared for indicative use only and is not intended for definitive legal, local formal reference purposes. Document Path: V:\Projects\BIO\Security\PestManagement\RegionalPestManagementStrategy\2016-2023\Maps\2018\_2023\_MapReport\_PestManagementAreas.mxd

## Appendix 2: Beneficiaries and Exacerbators

This is an expansion of Table 16 and lists groups of pests and those who benefit from controlling pests (beneficiaries) and those who contribute to the pest problem (exacerbators).

### Attachment 1

Pests to be Controlled	Beneficiaries	Exacerbators
African feather grass, Chilean Needlegrass, Chinese pennisetum, Giant buttercup, Nassella tussock, Nodding thistle, Ragwort, Russell thistle, Saffron thistle, Variegated thistle, Yellow bristle grass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary producers for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> <li>Persons who are knowingly distributing these pests</li> </ul>
Indian ring-necked parakeet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of economic and conservation values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly distributing these pests</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Indian myna, Rooks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary producers growing crops for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Banana passion vine, Bomarea, Cathedral bells, Chocolate vine, Climbing asparagus, Old man's beard, Yellow jasmine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values in areas where these pests are being controlled</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly distributing these pests</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Bathurst bur, Blackberry,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Black spot, Codling moth, European canker, Fireblight, Powdery mildew	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary producers growing apples and pears for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on adjoining properties</li> </ul>

Pests to be Controlled	Beneficiaries	Exacerbators
Broom, gorse	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary producers for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who knowingly distribute the seeds of these pests in roading metal and in mud on vehicles and heavy machinery</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Boneseed, Darwin's barberry, Gunnera, Himalayan balsam, Holly, Knotweeds, Purple loosestrife, Queensland poplar, Wild ginger, Woolly nightshade,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values</li> <li>Neighbouring properties for some protection from pest invasion</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who knowingly distribute these pests</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Feral cats, ferrets, stoats, weasels,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly releasing or distributing these pests</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Feral rabbits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of economic values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly releasing or distributing these pests</li> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on their properties</li> </ul>
Egeria, Entire marshwort, Hornwort, Lagarosiphon, Phragmites, Senegal tea	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values in waterways</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly releasing or distributing these pests into waterways</li> </ul>
Gambusia, Koi carp, Perch, Red-eared slider turtles, Rudd, Tench	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values in waterways</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Persons who are knowingly releasing or distributing these pests</li> </ul>
Reed sweet grass, Yellow flag	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values in waterways</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on adjoining properties</li> </ul>

Pests to be Controlled	Beneficiaries	Exacerbators
Rowan, Taiwan cherry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Local community for the protection of conservation values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers in the area who are not controlling these pests on adjoining properties</li> </ul>
Spartina	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values on coastal margins</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on adjoining properties</li> </ul>
Wilding conifers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regional community for the protection of conservation values</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Occupiers who are not controlling these pests on adjoining properties</li> </ul>



## Appendix 3: Application of NPD Criteria to PRPMP Pests

### Determining the level of analysis required

Section 6 of the *National Policy Direction for Pest Management (MPI, 2015)* records the criteria to be considered when determining the level of analysis to be used for the analysis of pests being considered for inclusion in regional pest management plans. The following criteria have been derived from this source and used in the following table.

### Assessment criteria

- 1 **Significance of the pest or the proposed measures**
  - **High** – High total costs **or** strongly opposed community views **or** significant community interest
  - **Medium** – Moderate total costs **or** some opposed community views **or** moderate community interest
  - **Low** – Low total costs **or** limited community interest
- 2 **Relationship between costs and benefits**
  - **High** – costs are likely to be similar to the benefits
  - **Medium** – costs are likely to be less than the benefits
  - **Low** – costs are likely to be much lower than the benefits
- 3 **Uncertainty of the impact of the pest and the effectiveness of the methods of control**
  - **High uncertainty** – Little known about its impacts **and** the effectiveness of control measures
  - **Medium uncertainty** – Some information available on its impacts **and** on the effectiveness of control measures
  - **Low uncertainty** – Plenty of information on its impacts **and** effectiveness of control measures
- 4 **Level and quality of available data**
  - \* **High** – High quality data on distribution **and** well-established costs and impacts
  - \* **Medium** – Limited information on distribution **and** on costs and impacts
  - \* **Low** – Little information available on distribution **and** costs and impacts

### Assessing the level of Cost Benefit Analysis

The level of Cost Benefit Analysis that is required to be undertaken is determined by the combination of ratings for these different categories (*Meeting the requirements of the National Policy Direction for Pest Management, MPI 2015*).

- \* A **High** level of CBA is needed when three of the four criteria listed above (Criteria 1-4) are assessed as high.
- \* A **Low** level of CBA can be undertaken when none of the first three criteria (Criteria 1-3) are ranked high and no more than two are ranked as medium.
- \* A **Medium** level of CBA is required for all other combinations.

**Table 18: To determine the level of cost-benefit analysis for individual pests**

Pest	Significance of pest or proposed measures	Cost in relation to benefits	Uncertainty of impact and effectiveness of control measures	Level and quality of data on distribution, costs and impacts	Overall level of CBA required
African feather grass	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Asiatic knotweed	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	High	Low
Banana passion vine (GBay-Riwaka, U Buller)	Medium	Medium	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Bathurst bur	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Blackberry	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Black spot	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Blue passion vine	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	Medium	Low
Bomarea	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Boneseed (outside Port Hills)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Boxthorn	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Broom (Howard-St Arnaud)	Low		Low uncertainty	High	Low
Broom (outside Howard-St Arnaud)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Brushtail possum (Waimea Estuary)	Medium	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Cathedral bells	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Chilean needle grass	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	High	Low
Chinese pennisetum	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Chocolate vine	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Climbing asparagus (E. Golden Bay)	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	High	Low
Climbing spindleberry	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Codling moth	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Darwin's barberry	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Egeria	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Entire marshwort	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
European canker	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Feral cats (high-value sites)	Medium	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Feral cats (Waimea Estuary)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Feral rabbits	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Ferrets (Waimea Estuary)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Fireblight	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Gambusia	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Giant buttercup	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low

Pest	Significance of pest or proposed measures	Cost in relation to benefits	Uncertainty of impact and effectiveness of control measures	Level and quality of data on distribution, costs and impacts	Overall level of CBA required
Gorse (Howard-St Arnaud)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Gorse (outside Howard-St Arnaud)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Greater bindweed (St Arnaud Village)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Gunnera	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Himalayan balsam	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Holly (St Arnaud Village)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Hornwort	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Indian ring-necked parakeet (feral)	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	Low	Low
Koi carp	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Lagarosiphon	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Madeira vine	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Nassella tussock (Richmond Hills)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Nassella tussock (Cape Soucis area)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Old man's beard (G Bay & U. Buller)	Medium	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Perch	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Phragmites	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Powdery mildew	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Purple loosestrife	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Queensland poplar	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	Medium	Low
Ragwort	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Red-eared slider turtles (feral)	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	Medium	Low
Reed sweet grass	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Rooks	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Rowan (St Arnaud Village)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Rudd	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Russell's lupin	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Sabella	Medium	Low	Medium uncertainty	Medium	Low
Saffron thistle	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Senegal tea	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Spartina	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Stoats (Waimea Estuary)	Medium	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Sycamore St Arnaud Village)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Taiwan cherry (NE Nelson City)	Medium	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Tench	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Variiegated thistle	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Velvet leaf	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Wallabies (Dama, Bennett's)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Weasels (Waimea Estuary)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
White-edged nightshade	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low

<b>Pest</b>	<b>Significance of pest or proposed measures</b>	<b>Cost in relation to benefits</b>	<b>Uncertainty of impact and effectiveness of control measures</b>	<b>Level and quality of data on distribution, costs and impacts</b>	<b>Overall level of CBA required</b>
Wild ginger (GBay-Kaiteriteri)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Wild kiwifruit(unmanaged)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Wilding conifers (designated take-off sites)	Medium	Medium	Low uncertainty	Medium	Low
Woolly nightshade (GBay)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Yellow bristle grass (outside the Waimea Plains)	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	Low	Low
Yellow flag	Low	Low	Low uncertainty	High	Low
Yellow jasmine	Low	Low	Medium uncertainty	Medium	Low

Based on the NPD assessment criteria, the information in this table, as shown in Column 6, indicates that a low level of CBA analysis will be adequate. This is shown in the sixth column. Accordingly, a qualitative analysis has been used, although it is intended to do some quantitative work on selected pests.

## Appendix 4: Summary of Benefits and Costs

This is taken from a supporting document (CBA Qualitative Analysis Notes for the Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan). For each pest, it summarises the benefits and the costs of the programme options that were considered and lists the conclusion for the programme that was selected.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>African feather grass</b>			
Eradication	A limited amount of time is required to continue the eradication of plants on one active site and to continue monitoring four other sites.	Eradication will prevent it spreading into natural areas, roadsides, wasteland and urban areas.	The benefits of eradication exceed the costs because of very low incidence, its highly invasive nature and extensive areas of suitable habitat.
Progressive containment	Progressive containment will require a similar commitment.	Progressive containment will achieve a similar outcome.	This option is not appropriate with only one active site remaining.
<b>Banana passion vine (Golden Bay - Riwaka, U. Buller)</b>			
Progressive containment	This successful community programme requires a very limited amount of staff time to provide support.	This will prevent substantial areas of scattered indigenous forest and scrubland from being smothered.	This is a cost-efficient way of improving the sustainability of forest and scrubland ecosystems and maintaining their conservation values.
Sustained control	A reduction in staff time could result in a reduction in the extent and/or the effectiveness of this community programme.	A smaller area may be treated and/or the regrowth may respond more quickly with less intensive treatment.	This could result in a much less effective control programme.
<b>Bathurst bur</b>			
Eradication	A limited amount of time is required to complete eradication. The seedlings are toxic to cattle, sheep, goats, horses, pigs and poultry, and the burs can damage the feet of livestock.	Eradication will allow stock to move freely and encourage the growth of preferred pasture species. It will also allow summer crops to be grown.	There are few known sites of Bathurst bur on which live plants are present and it is important that eradication of this pest is completed as quickly as possible.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Progressive containment	Less intensive management will require less time but prolong the impact of this agricultural pest.	Less intensive management will reduce the returns from grazing and from summer crops.	
<b>Blackberry</b>			
Sustained control	A limited amount of staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not keeping blackberry back from boundaries with clean neighbouring properties.	This will protect occupiers whose properties are free from blackberry from invasion at the boundary fences.	This is the most effective programme to allow control of boundary weeds.
Progressive containment	As above.	As above.	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.
<b>Black spot</b>			
Sustained control	This programme makes use of a boundary rules to allow access by orchardists to control Black spot on infested trees on adjoining land. Very little staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not prepared to allow access.	This will allow orchardists to control Black spot and produce high quality fruit.	This is the most appropriate programme for an ongoing programme designed to control an important horticultural pest on a sustainable basis.
Progressive containment	As above	As above	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.
<b>Bomarea</b>			
Progressive containment	Bomarea is a difficult plant to kill but use of the recommended technique will provide very good results without affecting its host plants.	This programme will prevent Bomarea from spreading quickly through extensive areas of scrubland and into forest margins.	This pest has a very limited distribution and it and progressive containment will quickly reduce its ability to rapidly spread.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Sustained control	It would be very difficult to stop the rapid spread of this plant without an intensive control programme.	This programme is unlikely to be able to slow the rapid spread of this pest.	
<b>Boneseed (outside Port Hills)</b>			
Eradication	This pest has a limited distribution outside the Port Hills area. A small amount of staff time is needed to continue with the eradication programme to prevent it spreading and to destroy seedlings that are a result of its long seed life.	This programme will allow the regrowth of native plants in coastal areas.	With its limited distribution, this is the most appropriate programme to allow this pest to be eradicated as quickly as possible.
Progressive containment	Less intensive management will unnecessarily prolong its eradication.	There will be a slight reduction in staff time in the short term, but substantially greater in the long term.	
<b>Boxthorn</b>			
Eradication	This pest has a limited distribution and a small amount of staff time is needed to continue with the eradication programme.	This programme will allow the regrowth of native plants in coastal areas and reduce the risk to humans or sheep that come into contact with its poisonous spines and toxic berries, stems, leaves and roots.	With its limited distribution, this is the most appropriate programme to allow this pest to be eradicated as quickly as possible.
Progressive containment	Less intensive management will unnecessarily prolong its eradication.	There will be a slight reduction in staff time in the short term, but substantially greater in the long term.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Broom (Howard - St Arnaud)</b>			
Sustained control	A limited amount of staff time is involved in controlling broom in this area. Its long seed life extends the time required for control.	This programme will control broom at a level that allows pastures to maintain productivity and native plants to remain as the dominant vegetation in shrubland.	This costs of this programme are matched by the benefits.
Progressive containment	The long seed life of broom makes it very difficult and costly to reduce its spatial distribution.	This will programme will provide a minor increase in pasture productivity and slight increase in the dominance of native plants in shrubland.	The additional costs would greatly exceed the extra benefits.
<b>Broom (outside Howard – St Arnaud area)</b>			
Sustained control	A limited amount of staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not keeping broom back from boundaries with clean neighbouring properties.	This will protect occupiers whose properties are free from broom from invasion at the boundary fences.	This is the most effective programme to allow control of boundary weeds.
Progressive containment	As above.	As above.	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.
<b>Brushtail possum (Waimea Estuary)</b>			
Site-led	This intensively managed programme is intended to achieve zero density of these pests in this area. There is very limited staff time involved in supporting this successful community-driven programme.	There are high biodiversity values in this area arising from the presence of rare coastal birds e.g. banded rail, marsh crane.	This is the most appropriate programme for small sites with very high natural values.



<b>Pest and Programme Options</b>	<b>Costs</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>
Not in RPMP	The potential loss of some very rare coastal birds.	A small saving off staff time.	
<b>Cathedral bells</b>			
Eradication	There are a limited number of active sites of this pest, as a result of an effective control programme. A limited amount of staff time is required to continue with this programme and follow up on the remaining active sites to achieve eradication.	This will allow regeneration of native species in low forest and shrubland and in forest margins.	This will allow the removal of a pest plant that poses a significant threat to regenerating forest and shrubland.
Progressive containment	Less intensive management will unnecessarily prolong its eradication and increase the risk of further spread.	There will be a slight reduction in staff time in the short term, but substantially greater in the long term.	
<b>Chinese pennisetum</b>			
Progressive containment	There is limited staff time involved in monitoring the effectiveness of control undertaken by occupiers of this pest with a restricted distribution.	Reducing its density and spatial distribution will improve pasture productivity.	Occupiers undertake programmes that balance the costs and benefits.
Eradication	This programme would require all occupiers to become involved. There are no significant benefits for plantation forest owners.	There would be a slight increase in pasture productivity.	This is not an appropriate programme. There would be a limited increase in benefits from significantly higher costs.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Chocolate vine</b>			
Progressive containment	This is a new pest that has a number of known active sites. It is expected that a modest amount of staff time will be needed for surveillance and to educate occupiers.	Progressive containment will ensure that plants and shrubs in regenerating shrublands will be protected over time from this aggressive fast-growing vine	This is the most appropriate programme for a new pest with a number of active sites that can be readily controlled and reduce its spatial distribution.
Eradication	A substantial amount of time will be required to attempt eradication on a new pest that is known to have a number of active sites.	This would allow earlier protection of regenerating shrubland and forest.	The additional costs associated with eradication is considered to greatly exceed the additional biodiversity benefits.
<b>Climbing asparagus (E. Golden Bay)</b>			
Progressive containment	This vine poses a risk to regenerating shrubland and forest. The work is being undertaken by Project Devine in Golden Bay. A very limited amount of staff time is required for surveillance and to educate occupiers.	Progressive containment will ensure that plants and shrubs in regenerating shrublands will achieve a reasonable degree of protection from this aggressive fast-growing vine	This is the most appropriate programme for this pest with a number of active sites.
Eradication	Eradication will require a much more intensive approach to deal with regrowth from tubers and from bird-distributed seed.	This would allow earlier protection of regenerating shrubland and forest.	The additional costs associated with eradication is considered to greatly exceed the additional biodiversity benefits.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Climbing spindleberry</b>			
Eradication	This pest has a limited number of known active sites. It is expected that a modest amount of staff time will be needed to follow up on earlier work to achieve eradication.	Eradication will ensure that native forest and shrublands will be protected from this pest within the short to medium term.	This is the most appropriate programme for this pest with a limited number of active sites where eradication can be achieved within a reasonable time frame and at a reasonable cost.
Progressive containment	The amount of time required for this programme is not much less than that required for eradication.	Progressive containment will provide a degree of protection to native forest and shrublands.	The costs associated with this programme are considered to be only slightly less than that required to achieve eradication but with significantly lower biodiversity benefits.
<b>Codling moth</b>			
Sustained control	This programme makes use of a boundary rules to allow access by orchardists to control Black spot on infested trees on adjoining land. Very little staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not prepared to allow access.	This will allow orchardists to control Codling moth and produce high quality fruit.	This is the most appropriate programme for an ongoing programme designed to control an important horticultural pest on a sustainable basis.
Progressive containment	As above	As above	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.
<b>Darwin's barberry (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There would be very limited staff time required to support the local community in eradicating this pest in and around the village.	Eradication could ensure farmland and regenerating shrubland remains free from this pest.	There are significant benefits that arise from staff support for community action to eradicate this pest.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Not in RPMP	Eradication in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow control on their property.	This pest will invade tussock grassland, herbfield, shrubland and regenerating forest, smothering native species.	
<b>Egeria</b>			
Eradication	There are a limited number of ponds where this pest, a vigorous submerged aquatic, has been treated over a number of years and is no longer active. It will be monitored for another couple of years before eradication can be confirmed. There is little staff time involved.	This will prevent dense stands of this aquatic pest forming, suppressing other aquatic plants, degrading the natural character of ponds, restricting their recreational use and impeding irrigation operations.	Maintaining monitoring and undertaking any further treatment that may be required provides the best return on the time involved.
Progressive containment	Progressive containment involves less intensive monitoring but may delay the response to undertake further treatment if required.	This may make some minor savings in staff time for monitoring but this could more than offset by the additional costs of treatment from delayed treatment.	
<b>Entire marshwort</b>			
Eradication	There are only two ponds where this aquatic pest remains and it can be eradicated with minimal input of time.	This aquatic perennial can reduce water flow, suppress other aquatic plants, degrade the natural character of waterbodies, restrict recreational activities and impede irrigation	Maintaining monitoring and undertaking any further treatment that may be required provides the best return on the time involved.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Progressive containment	Progressive containment involves less intensive monitoring but may delay the response to undertake further treatment if required.	This may make some minor savings in staff time for monitoring but this could more than offset by the additional costs of treatment from delayed treatment.	
<b>European canker</b>			
Sustained control	This programme makes use of a boundary rule to allow access by orchardists to control European canker on infested trees on adjoining land. Very little staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not prepared to allow access.	This will control this slow acting fungal disease that can girdle infected branches, cause shoot dieback and eventually trunk dieback, reducing apple production	Orchardists are best placed to make economic decisions on disease control.
Progressive containment	This programme would require orchardists to undertake a much more comprehensive treatment on infested trees on adjoining land.	This would reduce the level of infection of this pest but at a very substantial costs.	
<b>Feral cats (Waimea Estuary)</b>			
Site-led	There is limited staff time required to support this well-organised initiative involving community volunteers to undertake intensive trapping in this area.	This will increase the level of protection for rare ground-nesting species such as banded rail and Australian bitterns as well as a range of other native species.	The benefits arising from this community initiative more than justifies the limited staff time involved.
Not in RPMP	A wide range of native species will be at greater risk.	There will be a small saving in staff time	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Feral rabbits (Golden Bay)</b>			
Eradication	Feral rabbits are not known to have been established in Golden Bay outside Awaroa. Eradication would prevent their spread through Golden Bay.	This would prevent competition for forage grown for cows and sheep, damage to vegetable crops, damage to young trees and shrubs, and providing an additional food supply to stoats.	Early eradication of any newly-established feral rabbits will provide major economic and biodiversity benefits if this can be achieved at an early stage of establishment.
Progressive containment	This programme is less likely to achieve early eradication and increase economic and biodiversity loss.	This may provide some initial cost savings	
<b>Fireblight</b>			
Sustained control	This programme makes use of a boundary rule to allow access by orchardists to control Fireblight on infested trees on adjoining land. Very little staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not prepared to allow access.	This programme will provide adequate control of this bacterial disease that blackens leaves, twigs and flowers. Fruit from orchards containing this pest cannot be exported to Australia, Japan and South Korea.	Orchardists are best placed to make economic decisions on the appropriate level of control.
Progressive containment	This programme would require orchardists to undertake comprehensive treatment on much wider range of infested trees on adjoining land.	This would reduce the level of infection of this pest but at a very substantial cost.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Gambusia</b>			
Eradication	There is little staff time involved in supporting DOC staff with their programme to eradicate this small aggressive fish which has a limited distribution on the south side of the Waimea Estuary.	Eradication of this pest will protect a variety of native fish and a range of aquatic organisms	Reason for its adoption
Progressive containment	This programme is less likely to achieve early eradication and increase the potential biodiversity loss.	This may provide some initial cost savings.	
<b>Giant buttercup</b>			
Sustained control	There is little staff time involved in supporting dairy farmers to control this fast-growing plant pest.	This programme will provide adequate control of this fast-growing plant pest that can outgrow most pasture grasses and is unpalatable to cows.	Dairy farmers are best placed to make economic decisions on the appropriate level of control.
Progressive containment	This programme would require dairy farmers to undertake comprehensive treatment of this pest along their boundaries.	This would reduce the level of competition from this pest but at a very substantial cost as herbicide-resistant strains have developed.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Gorse (Howard-St Arnaud)</b>			
Sustained control	A limited amount of staff time is involved in controlling gorse in this area. Its long seed life extends the time required for control.	This programme will control gorse at a level that allows pastures to maintain productivity and native plants to remain as the dominant vegetation in shrubland.	This costs of this programme are matched by the benefits.
Progressive containment	The long seed life of gorse makes it very difficult and costly to reduce its spatial distribution.	This will programme will provide a minor increase in pasture productivity and slight increase in the dominance of native plants in shrubland.	The additional costs would greatly exceed the extra benefits.
<b>Gorse (outside Howard-St Arnaud)</b>			
Sustained control	A limited amount of staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not keeping gorse back from boundaries with clean neighbouring properties.	This will protect occupiers whose properties are free from gorse from invasion at the boundary fences.	This is the most effective programme to allow control of boundary weeds.
Progressive containment	As above.	As above.	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.
<b>Greater bindweed (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There would be very limited staff time required to support the local community in eradicating this pest in and around the village.	This programme will prevent this vigorous sprawling perennial from invading bush margins, roadsides, swamps and waste areas, smothering small plants and shrubs in this area.	There are significant biodiversity benefits from staff support for community action to eradicate this pest.



Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Not in RPMP	Eradication in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow control on their property.	This will save a very small amount of staff time.	
<b>Gunnera</b>			
Progressive containment	This tall herbaceous plant is a challenging pest to control because of its rapid growth and prolific seed production. The limited information on its distribution makes it difficult to determine a time frame for eradication. Its presence in wetlands restricts the herbicides that can be used for treatment.	This will reduce the geographical distribution of this pest which is invading wetlands and riparian areas, forming dense stands and smothering shorter vegetation.	Progressive containment is the most appropriate programme for a pest where there is limited information on its distribution.
Eradication	Eradication would require a major increase in costs associated with surveillance, treatment and ongoing monitoring,	An eradication campaign would provide benefits arising from its early removal from high value sites such as wetlands and riparian areas.	
<b>Himalayan balsam</b>			
Eradication	As it has a limited distribution, there are limited costs involved in the treatment and monitoring of this aggressive fast-growing coloniser of wetlands and riparian margins.	Early treatment will limit its downstream spread from water-distributed seeds and protect indigenous biodiversity in riparian margins and wetlands.	Its limited distribution and its susceptibility to common herbicides suggest an eradication programme would provide the greatest benefits for the costs involved.

<b>Pest and Programme Options</b>	<b>Costs</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>
Progressive containment	This would achieve similar results to the eradication programme but over a longer time-frame, resulting in increased longer-term costs.	This programme would provide some short-term savings, but increased long-term costs.	
<b>Holly (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There would be very limited staff time required to support the local community in eradicating this pest in and around the village.	Eradication could ensure the adjoining areas of tussock grassland, regenerating shrubland and forest remain free from this pest.	There are significant benefits that arise from staff support for community action to eradicate this pest.
Not in RPMP	Eradication in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow control on their property.	This pest will invade tussock grassland, herbfield, shrubland and regenerating forest, smothering native species.	
<b>Indian ring-necked parakeet (feral)</b>			
Eradication	This is a pest that is not currently known to be present in the wild. It is available as a pet and in other regions, has escaped and established. A small amount of time will be allocated to surveillance; funds will be made available to assist with its capture if necessary.	Eradication of this threat will ensure this pest does not become established where it could compete with native birds for food and nesting sites in native forest and shrubland, introducing exotic diseases to native birds, or feed on fruit and cereal crops in primary production areas.	This pest is included to ensure that funding is available to assist with its capture, if that is necessary.
Exclusion			Council has no powers to exclude this bird, an established pet, from the region.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Knotweeds (Giant, Asiatic and cultivars)</b>			
Progressive containment	This is a new pest and considered likely to have a limited distribution. It can establish from seed, stem fragments and roots, and is considered difficult to kill. It may require a modest level of funding to control.	This programme will reduce the risk of this pest becoming established along waterways, wasteland, and roadsides.	Progressive containment is the most appropriate programme for this pest, given the lack of information on its distribution and its reputation of being difficult to kill.
Eradication	As this pest is considered very difficult to kill, and there is very limited information on its distribution, eradication could be very difficult to achieve within the Plan's time frame with a very substantial input of resources into surveillance, treatment, education, and monitoring.	Eradication would allow an earlier reduction of the risks that it poses.	
<b>Lagarosiphon</b>			
Sustained control	This aquatic pest is found in a number of significant waterways. It has an amazing ability to regenerate from vegetative fragments.	In the absence of low-cost effective methods of control, water flows will be impeded, dense stands of this pests will reduce oxygen levels, shade native aquatic plants and invertebrates, and impede migrating fish.	Sustained control is the most appropriate programme for an aquatic pest that is readily distributed but costly to treat. A pathway management programme could be considered at a later date.
Progressive containment	Major costs would be incurred to reduce its distribution by treating with herbicides. Multiple treatments would be needed.		

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Madeira vine</b>			
Eradication	This pest vine arises from rhizomes that are very difficult to kill. It has a very restricted distribution as a result of intensive treatment. Limited costs will be incurred by completing eradication on the small number of remaining sites.	Eradication will ensure that native species in forest margins, shrublands and gullies are protected from smothering or toppling.	Eradication is considered achievable within the term of the Plan, given the very few sites involved and is considered to provide the best use of scarce resources.
Progressive containment	A less intensive approach will unnecessarily extend treatment time.	This will produce some short-term savings but be more costly in the medium term.	
<b>Nassella tussock (outside Cape Soucis area)</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme is an efficient way of dealing with very low numbers of Nassella tussock scattered through grassland at a single site in the Richmond Hills	This programme will provide a level of control that will prevent this pest from spreading into adjoining grassland, reducing its productivity.	It provides an effective way of controlling this pest and continuing to reduce the number of plants on this site.
Eradication	Eradication would be a very costly programme as it is very difficult to identify individual Nassella plants scattered through grassland.	Eradication would provide the best long-term solution but the cost would be prohibitive as seed can remain viable for several years.	
<b>Nassella tussock (Cape Souci area)</b>			
Sustained control	This programme is best suited to the management of this pest at the single site on very steep coastal terrain. The costs are high because of health and safety requirements.	This programme will provide a level of control that will minimise the risk of this pest spreading into adjoining native coastal areas or into nearby grassland.	This will provide the most cost-effective outcome for this difficult site.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Progressive containment	Progressive containment would be very costly to achieve on steep coastal terrain.	Progressive containment would further reduce the risk of spread but the cost would be prohibitive.	
<b>Nodding thistle</b>			
Sustained control	This programme, implemented through a boundary control rule, provides a very effective low-cost method of controlling movement of its seeds onto land that is clear of this pest.	The Sustained control programme, using a boundary control rule, is well suited to restrict this pest's spread. Biocontrol agents are steadily reducing thistle density.	This programme is considered to provide the most cost-effective option.
Progressive containment	It would be very costly to implement an effective Progressive Containment programme for a pest that produces heavy seeds with an extended period of viability.	This programme would result in a more rapid decrease in thistle density but it would be costly.	
<b>Old man's beard (Golden Bay - Riwaka, Upper Buller)</b>			
Progressive containment	There is little staff time required to support the Project Devine team who are employing contractors and working with community groups in Golden Bay to undertake intensive management of natural areas with follow-up visits to deal with this and other persistent vines.	This programme could provide substantial benefits by removing OMB from infested native forests and shrublands and preventing its spread into areas that are clear of this pest.	This programme will provide the greatest benefits for the limited staff time involved.

<b>Pest and Programme Options</b>	<b>Costs</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>
Sustained control	This less intensive programme would also require little staff time, but require a lot more follow up to provide ongoing control.	This less intensive programme would provide fewer benefits	This programme will provide the greatest benefits for the limited staff time involved.
<b>Perch</b>			
Eradication	There is little staff time involved in supporting the Eradication programme undertaken by DOC.	Eradication of Perch will protect a wide range of native fish and aquatic organisms such as koura.	Reason for its adoption
Progressive containment	This less intensive programme would also require very little staff time, but it will require a lot more follow up to provide ongoing control.	This less intensive programme would provide fewer benefits.	
<b>Powdery mildew</b>			
Sustained control	This programme makes use of a boundary rules to allow access by orchardists to control powdery mildew on infested trees on adjoining land. Very little staff time is required to deal with occupiers who are not prepared to allow access.	This will allow orchardists to control powdery mildew and produce high quality fruit.	This is the most appropriate programme for an ongoing programme designed to control an important horticultural pest on a sustainable basis.
Progressive containment	As above	As above	This is not an appropriate programme as there will be no reduction in spatial distribution.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Purple loosestrife</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme will deal efficiently with a difficult pest that is a prolific producer of seed with a long seed life but a very restricted distribution. It will require a small amount of staff time for a number of years.	This programme will provide a steady reduction in the density and geographical distribution of this pest, protecting native species in wetlands and on the margins of wetlands.	This programme is the most appropriate one to deal with a pest with a very limited distribution that is a prolific producer of seed that has a long seed life.
Eradication	As above.	As above but this may not be achieved within the time frame of this Plan.	
<b>Queensland poplar</b>			
Progressive containment	This is a new pest and this programme will require a limited amount of staff time to undertake surveillance, and develop and implement a management plan and work with agencies and landowners on its control.	Controlling this pest will minimise the risks posed by its ability as a shade-tolerant tree to invade open spaces, roadsides, regenerating shrubland and forest margins.	This programme is considered to provide the most effective way of dealing with this difficult pest.
Eradication	As above.	As above. However, there is uncertainty about its present distribution and the likelihood of reinvasion from seed in fruit carried by birds from trees in domestic gardens. This makes eradication unlikely.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Ragwort</b>			
Sustained control	This programme, implemented through a boundary control rule, provides a very effective low-cost method of preventing movement of its seeds onto neighbouring land that is clear of this pest and requires very little staff time to manage.	Restrict this pest's spread onto adjoining land that is clear of this pest will prevent it from displacing pasture grasses, impeding stock access, providing habitat for pests, and invading native shrubland.	This programme is considered to provide the most cost-effective option.
Progressive containment	It would be very costly to implement an effective Progressive Containment programme for a pest that produces seeds with a very long period of viability.	This programme may result in a more rapid decrease in ragwort density but it would be costly. Investment in biocontrol have produced a number of effective agents that have dramatically reduced the density and distribution of ragwort.	
<b>Red-eared slider turtles (feral)</b>			
Eradication	This programme is intended to support an early response to a reported sighting of this pest and to work with other agencies to achieve early capture. Juvenile turtles can be kept as household pets and some have been released into waterways, usually after outgrowing their aquarium.	Early capture of a released turtle would prevent their feeding on a range of native fish, plants and insects, significantly reducing aquatic biodiversity. Fortunately, the water temperature is too low to allow breeding.	This is considered to be the most appropriate programme for this pest.
Progressive containment	This would not be an appropriate programme for a single turtle.	This would not be an appropriate programme for a single turtle	



Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Reed sweet grass</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme is intended to bring this pest to zero density and then manage the seedling regrowth that will continue to occur over an extended period of time.	This programme will prevent this pest from forming dense impenetrable stands that can impede access and drainage, and cause silting and flooding. It will quickly minimise the risk of cyanide poisoning of stock and the threat to wetlands.	The very limited number of sites and recent history of treatment provide confidence that management of this pest can be reduced to treatment of seedlings from buried seed and provide the most cost-effective solution.
Eradication	The prolific seeding and long seed life of this pest make it unlikely that this can be achieved with the time frame of this Plan, despite the limited number of sites and the recent history of treatment.	As above.	
<b>Rowan (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There would be very little staff time required to support the local community in removing this pest in and around the village.	This programme will prevent this shade-tolerant deciduous European hardwood from invading intact and regenerating forest, shrubland and wetlands, smothering small plants and shrubs in the area.	There are significant biodiversity benefits from supporting community action to remove this pest.
Not in RPMP	Eradication in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow anyone on to their property.	This would save a very small amount of staff time.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Rudd</b>			
Eradication	There is little staff time involved in supporting the ongoing Eradication programme being undertaken by DOC.	Eradication of Rudd will protect a wide range of aquatic organisms.	This programme is designed to support DOC's decision to undertake eradication of this pest.
Progressive containment	This less intensive programme would require less staff time initially, but more follow up time to provide ongoing control.	This less intensive programme would provide fewer benefits.	
<b>Russell lupin (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There would be very little staff time required to support the local community in removing this pest in and around the village, but some follow up time will be required to control seed with an extended seed life.	This programme will prevent this perennial North American herb from invading riverbeds, wetlands, tussock land and sub-alpine shrublands, shading out native plant species, and reducing habitat for nesting birds.	There are significant biodiversity benefits from supporting community action to remove this pest.
Not in RPMP	Eradication in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow anyone on to their property.	This will save a very small amount of staff time in the short term but this will be offset by the need for ongoing control.	
<b>Sabella (Mediterranean fanworm)</b>			
Sustained control	Sustained control of this marine pest is feasible with current manual techniques. The extended coastline and free movement of marine vessels make it difficult to determine its current distribution.	Sustained control can provide a reasonable level of control and reduce the risk of damage to marine engines, commercial shellfish and native marine species.	There is much greater certainty about being able to achieve Sustained Control rather than Progressive Containment with existing methods of control and limited knowledge of its distribution outside the main ports.

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Progressive containment	Progressive containment could involve higher ongoing costs and it is currently not feasible to prevent reinfestation from visiting vessels.	Progressive containment would provide a greater level of protection for marine engines, commercial shellfish and native marine species.	
<b>Saffron thistle</b>			
Eradication	This pest is restricted to a limited number of sites that will require ongoing management to remove any plants that emerge from buried seed.	Removal of young thistles before they seed will protect sheep, prevent wool being downgraded, and prevent further seed being produced.	This is considered to be the most appropriate programme for this pest.
Progressive containment	This less intensive programme would require less staff time initially, but more follow up time to provide ongoing control.	This less intensive programme would provide fewer benefits.	
<b>Spartina</b>			
Eradication	This is a demanding long-term programme that is being undertaken by DOC with support from TDC staff. The affected area has continued to shrink and the major challenge is finding and removing the remaining plants amongst other coastal plants in and adjoining the inter-tidal zone.	Effective control of Spartina has significantly reduced the risk of sediment build up and of flooding, and increased the areas available for fish and bird habitat and for fish spawning.	This ongoing programme has made excellent progress and it is important to protect these gains and complete its eradication.
Progressive containment	This would result in a much slower period of recovery.	The end result would be the same as above but the time frame would take longer to achieve.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Stoats (Waimea Estuary)</b>			
Site-led	There is very little staff time required to support this well-organised initiative involving community volunteers to undertake intensive trapping in this limited areas.	This will increase the level of protection for rare ground-nesting species such as banded rail and Australian bitterns as well as a range of other native species.	The benefits arising from this community initiative more than justifies the limited staff time involved.
Not in RPMP	A wide range of native species will be at greater risk.	There will be a small saving in staff time.	
<b>Sycamore (St Arnaud Village)</b>			
Site-led	There is little staff time involved in supporting this community-led programme to remove all sycamore from a restricted area in and around the village.	This programme will prevent this cold-tolerant deciduous tree from spreading over riverbeds, tussock land and shrublands, shading out native plant species.	There are significant biodiversity benefits from supporting community action to remove this pest.
Not in RPMP	Eradication of all sycamore in and around the Village would not be possible if one or two landowners are reluctant to allow anyone on to their property.	This will save a very small amount of staff time in the short term but this will be offset by the need for ongoing control.	
<b>Taiwan cherry and cultivars (NE Nelson City)</b>			
Site-led	There is little staff time involved in supporting the work programme funded by Nelson City Council to control the rapid spread of Taiwan Cherry onto public land adjoining the city's eastern boundary from Enner Glynn northwards.	This work will reduce the geographical distribution of these trees but it will require ongoing work to control wildings arising from the small succulent fruit transported by birds from cherry trees in nearby domestic gardens.	There are significant biodiversity benefits from supporting the Council's action to control this pest.

<b>Pest and Programme Options</b>	<b>Costs</b>	<b>Benefits</b>	<b>Conclusion</b>
Not in RPMP	The establishment of dense stands of Taiwan cherry will limit public access and could invade existing areas of shrubland and forest.	This could save a very small amount of staff time.	
<b>Tench</b>			
Eradication	There is little staff time involved in supporting the ongoing Eradication programme being undertaken by DOC.	Eradication of Tench will protect a wide range of aquatic organisms.	This programme is designed to support DOC's decision to undertake eradication of this pest.
Progressive containment	This less intensive programme would require less staff time initially, but more follow up time to provide ongoing control.	This less intensive programme would provide fewer benefits.	
<b>Variegated thistle</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme will require some staff time to continue with surveillance and to educate occupiers and monitor their performance in controlling this plant.	Effective control of this pest will prevent the establishment of dense stands on pastoral and cropping areas, allowing them to increase their productivity, and reduce its geographical distribution.	This programme seems likely to provide more cost-effective use of scarce resources.
Sustained control	A smaller amount of staff time and occupiers' resources would be needed to implement this programme.	A lower level of control will take a much longer time to produce productivity gains.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Weasels (Waimea Estuary)</b>			
Site-led	There is very little staff time required to support this well-organised initiative involving community volunteers to undertake intensive trapping in these limited areas.	This will increase the level of protection for lizards, small birds, birds' eggs and insects like weta. They are likely to be present in very low numbers in neighbourhood gardens, fernland and scrub.	The benefits arising from this community initiative more than justifies the limited staff time involved.
Not in RPMP	A wide range of native species will be at greater risk.	There will be a small saving in staff time.	
<b>White-edged nightshade</b>			
Progressive containment	This thorny multi-branched perennial shrub has a limited distribution and this programme will require a limited amount of staff time to educate and monitor the work of occupiers.	An effective Progressive containment programme will prevent this pest from invading regenerating shrubland, bush margins and pastureland, forming dense impenetrable thickets, and producing berries that are poisonous to humans and stock.	There are tools available to reduce its density and distribution and this programme is expected to provide a better return on the resources invested in controlling it.
Sustained control	This less intensive programme will require less staff time and less landowner resources.	This programme would be unlikely to achieve a reduction in its geographical distribution.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Wild ginger (Golden Bay-Kaiteriteri)</b>			
Progressive containment	This non-woody perennial has a limited distribution in this area and has undergone intensive management, using a moderate amount of staff time. The successful results indicate that a reduction in its geographic distribution is feasible.	An effective programme will reduce its geographical distribution and prevent this pest from invading coastal forests and shrublands, suppressing natural regeneration, blocking streams and drains, and restricting recreational access.	This programme can achieve a reduction in the geographical distribution of this pest, producing significant benefits.
Sustained control	This programme would utilise a lesser amount of staff time.	This programme could prevent further invasion but would not achieve a reduction in its geographical distribution.	
<b>Wild kiwifruit (including unmanaged and abandoned)</b>			
Eradication	This programme would require a limited amount of staff time to undertake surveillance, respond to reports, educate occupiers, deal with isolated wildings, and liaise with the industry organisation.	An effective programme would minimise the biosecurity risk to the kiwifruit industry from Psa and other pests and pathogens. It would also reduce the impact of wildings on native trees in forests, shrublands and gullies.	This programme would provide the best use of scarce resources to minimise the risk to an important horticultural crop and reduce the impact of wildings on biodiversity.
Progressive containment	This programme would require a smaller commitment of staff time for implementation.	It would also provide a lower level of response and potentially a small increase in risk to the industry.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Wilding conifers</b>			
Site-led	This programme would support a co-ordinated response to the management of wilding conifers that pose a significant threat to biodiversity values. This threat will increase with time. It would require a significant input of staff time and of resources to achieve meaningful gains.	The programme would provide substantial biodiversity benefits to a wide range of sites on public and private land.	This programme is an important one where the use of resources at this point in time will produce substantial future savings in the protection of high value sites and landscapes.
Not in RPMP	Wilding conifers are expanding into areas with high biodiversity values, and the costs of management will increase rapidly if no further action is taken.	There would be short-term savings in staff time and other resources.	
<b>Woolly nightshade (Golden Bay)</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme is intended to reduce the distribution of this aggressive fast-growing shrub. A moderate amount of staff time will be required for surveillance, mapping, education, and management.	This programme is intended to reduce the distribution of this pest that has adverse effects on the productive, biodiversity or recreational values of sites. Dust from its leaves irritates human eyes and throats; it seeds prolifically and they are poisonous to humans, stock and pigs; it restricts regeneration of native plants; and it can invade pasture land, reducing its productive capacity.	This programme will provide better long-term benefits by reducing its geographic distribution.



Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
Sustained control	This programme would involve a reduction in the input of staff time and occupier resources.	This programme would be unlikely to achieve a reduction in its geographical distribution.	
<b>Yellow bristle grass (Golden Bay and Upper Buller)</b>			
Sustained control	This programme is intended to reduce the risk of spreading this pest by roadside mowers in Golden Bay and will require little staff time to implement and monitor.	This will prevent the spread of a pest that can invade pastures and cause substantial production loss.	This programme will provide most effective use of resources.
Progressive containment	This programme would require more staff time and substantially more resources to achieve a reduction in its geographical distribution.	A reduction in its geographical distribution would provide economic benefits but at a very substantial cost with current techniques.	
<b>Yellow flag</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme is designed to reduce the distribution of this pest and will require a limited amount of staff resources for its implementation and follow-up.	This will prevent its spread onto the margins of saltmarsh, wetlands and other waterbodies. Its rhizomes are poisonous to animals and its seeds are poisonous to birds.	This programme will make efficient use of the resources required for its management and achieve its objective within the Plan's time frame.
Eradication	This programme is considered unlikely to achieve its goal of eradication within the time frame of this Plan. This pest produces massive rhizomes and regrows from them.	This programme would require a substantial increase in staff resources for its implementation.	

Pest and Programme Options	Costs	Benefits	Conclusion
<b>Yellow jasmine</b>			
Progressive containment	This programme is intended to reduce the density and distribution of this pest and will require a limited amount of staff resources for its implementation and follow-up.	This programme will protect native species on coastal cliffs and forest margins.	This programme will make efficient use of the resources required for its management and achieve its objective within the Plan's time frame.
Eradication	This programme is considered unlikely to achieve its goal of eradication within the time frame of this Plan. As a new pest, surveillance is required to map its distribution. It is likely to be found in sites that are difficult to access and it has a reputation as being a difficult plant to kill.	This programme would require a substantial increase in staff resources for its implementation.	

## Appendix 5: Organisms of Interest

These are pests that were considered for inclusion in the Proposed RPMP, but did not meet the criteria outlined in the National Policy Direction for Pest Management.

Common Name	Scientific Name	Notes
Argentine* and Darwin's* ants	<i>Linepithema humile</i> , <i>Doleromyrmra darwiniana</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale (eg, biocontrol agents). Can continue to monitor spread and provide information on control at local level.
Australian magpie*	<i>Cracticus tibicen</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information and traps to control at local level.
Australian sedge*	<i>Carex longibrachiata</i>	Localised pest – limited impact - little risk of spread.
Brushtail possum* (outside Waimea Estuary)	<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Lack tools to control at a landscape scale. Can continue to provide information and traps to control at local level.
Californian thistle	<i>Cirsium arvense</i>	Widespread pest. New biocontrol agents may provide acceptable level of control.
Canadian geese	<i>Branta canadensis</i>	Lack tools to control spread on a landscape scale. Can monitor distribution and provide information on control at local level.
Cotoneaster	<i>Cotoneaster glaucophyllus</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information on control at local level.
Feral cats (outside Waimea Inlet)	<i>Felis catus</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information and traps to control at local level.
Feral rabbits* (outside Golden Bay)	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information and traps to control at local level.
Ferrets* (outside Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela furo</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information and traps to control at local level.
Hares*	<i>Lepus europaeus</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information and traps to control at local level.
Parrot's feather*	<i>Myriophyllum aquaticum</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Limited tools for control at a local level.
Purple nut sedge	<i>Cyperus rotundus</i>	Lack tools to control on a landscape scale and limited tools available at a local level.
Purple pampas*	<i>Cortaderia jubata</i>	Widespread pest, self-fertilising, light wind-distributed seed. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information on control at local level.
Reed canary grass*	<i>Phalaris arundinacea</i>	Common but not significant pest. Can provide information to control at local level.
Rats (Norwegian, Ship rat, Kiore)	<i>Rattus norvegicus</i> , <i>R. rattus</i> , <i>R. exulans</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information to control at a local level.
Stoats* (outside Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela erminea</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information to control at a local level.

Undaria*	<i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	Widely-distributed marine pest with limited impact. Lack suitable tools for widespread control.
Wasps (German, Common)	<i>Vespula germanica</i> , <i>V. vulgaris</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information on control at a local level. Biocontrol agents under development.
Weasels* (outside Waimea Estuary)	<i>Mustela nivalis vulgaris</i>	Widespread pest. Lack tools to control on a landscape scale. Can provide information on control at a local level.
Wild hops	<i>Humulus lupulus</i>	Limited distribution. Not considered to be a significant pest.

\* Pests included in the Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest Management Strategy 2012-2017

## **Future Management of Pest Species and Programmes Falling Outside the Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal**

### **Purpose of this Document**

The purpose of this document is to identify pest species or pest programmes which are undertaken within the current Regional Pest Management Strategy 2012 – 2017 (RPMS) and its associated Operational Plan, but are not be included in the Tasman-Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal 2017 - 2027 (RPMP) and to provide guidance on the future provision of these services.

### **Regional Pest Management Plans**

Biosecurity is about the management of pests. Pests include plants, animals and other organisms with the potential to harm primary production, the environmental, human health or cultural values. Therefore pests cover a wide range of organisms which are managed for a wide range of purposes using a wide range of techniques.

A Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP) is one method to declare and manage regional pest species. It allows a regional council to use the legal powers contained within the Biosecurity Act 1993 to achieve the objectives of their RPMP. Those powers include the power to: declare regional pests, undertake inspection, require landowners to undertake control and where the required control is not undertaken to undertake the control deemed necessary and to recover costs from the landowner or occupier concerned. A RPMP therefore is concerned with identifying pest species and pest programmes for which legal powers are required.

However, in order to access the legal powers under the Biosecurity Act 1993 (the Act) and to place legal requirements on landowners and occupiers, the Act requires that the criteria specified in the National Policy Direction for Pest Management 2015 (NPD) must be met. NPD limits the type of pest management programme that may be used and requires that analysis of benefits and costs are undertaken for each pest, including a careful assessment of where the costs and benefits fall, and how fair to landowners subject to requirements that cost distribution is.

The net effect of these requirements is to limit pests contained in a RPMP to those able to meet the NPD specified requirements to a restricted range of management programmes where the benefits gained are greater than the costs involved and where those required to fund the pest control activity receive commensurate benefits.

### **Delivery of Service under Provisions of the Local Government Act**

Where NPD requirements for inclusion of a pest within a RPMP cannot be met or where the legal powers of the Act are not required to achieve a practical level of service, pest species can still be managed by councils through providing services to their residents. Examples of this type of service include:

- Direct action on councils' controlled land such as park and reserve areas;

- Advice to residents on the management of non-RPMP pest species;
- Provision of educational material to promote good practice and effective control.
- Provision of grants and/or subsidies to community groups or landowners to undertake pest control on both public and private land;
- Support of volunteer and community groups engaged in pest control or native restoration works;
- Investment in the provision of pest management techniques or pest control technology which assists in the control of a wide range of pest species.

Previously many pests and services were contained within RPMS's and their associated annual Operational Plans, which did not strictly require the use of the Act's powers but did require the application of Council funds to provide these services. There is no reason that these programmes or services cannot be continued, but they must be continued as service delivery outside the provisions of a RPMP (if the respective councils mandate and fund that service provision).

### **Pest Programmes or Species previously included in the Regional Pest Management Strategy and its associated Operational Plan unable to meet National Policy Direction requirements**

#### **Pest Programmes**

The Tasman Nelson Regional Pest Management Strategy (RPMS) and its associated Operational Plan, which preceded the Tasman Nelson Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal (RPMP), contained a number of programmes and work streams which do not meet National Policy Direction. These are:

#### ***Regional Surveillance Pests***

These pests are generally widespread and beyond the ability of the councils to control but the councils of the day considered that it was still important to monitor those species and to provide information and advice to landowners. This also placed the councils in a better position to undertake control should new or improved control tools become available. Regional Surveillance pests also included newly established species with the potential to become regional pests but for which insufficient information existed to justify intervention at that time.

Regional Surveillance Pests within the RPMS included Parrot's Feather, *Pinus contorta*, *Undaria*, and Yellow Flag. Surveillance was also undertaken for Argentine and Darwin's ants to understand their location and rate of spread.

NPD does not contain a programme equivalent for regional surveillance as there are no legal rules to be applied. However, surveillance is a vital part of biosecurity management.

**Regional surveillance will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### ***Biological Control***

Long-term management of widespread pest species at a landscape scale is best achieved by biological control agents that prey specifically on that pest species or impact it in a way that weakens or kills it. Traditional methods of pest control are increasingly costly and may face more restrictions in future from changes in land use, new information on the impact of pesticides, and from changes in public attitude towards the use of pesticides. Biological control may be the only practicable long-term management option available for some species.

Developing and testing such biocontrol agents is a long-term and expensive exercise. It requires the identification of suitable biological control agents (generally from overseas), testing those agents will work on the target species, testing that they will not attack other desirable species in New Zealand, gaining consent to import these agents, then breeding and releasing them. Sometimes the agents fail to thrive in a New Zealand environment so only a percentage of releases are successful but the long-term effectiveness of those agents which successfully establish can be considerable. Under the RPMS Tasman and Nelson Councils supported the National Biocontrol Collective, which funds research and development of biocontrol agents for widespread plant and insect pest species.

**Support of biocontrol research, development and release will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### ***Marine Biosecurity***

Some marine pests or pathways are amenable to management through RPMP's or Pathway Management Plans. However, other initiatives such as education, support of industry marine biosecurity plans, interregional co-ordination and response do not fit well with the requirements of NPD.

Under the RPMS the Tasman and Nelson councils are members of the Top of the South Marine Biosecurity Partnership along with Marlborough District Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries. This partnership was formed as the pests introduced into the waters of the Top of the South do not recognise regional boundaries and it was in everyone's interest to pool resources and work together. Much of the output of this partnership is via a contracted regional co-ordination group with science, administrative and planning support. The contracted regional co-ordination group also provides most of the surveillance and response capacity for the *Sabella spallanzanii* under the Small Scale Management Plans declared by all of the Top of the South councils.

**Support of the Top of the South Marine Biosecurity Partnership will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### ***National Pest Plant Accord Species***

The National Pest Plant Accord (NPPA) was developed in 2001 as a co-operative agreement between the Nursery and Garden Industry Association, regional councils and government agencies with biosecurity responsibilities. The Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) is the government agency responsible for NPPA implementation, training and provision of Warrants of Authorisation for this task. The Accord lists plants with the potential to escape from gardens and become naturalised weeds, adversely affecting productive land or the natural environment. Its purpose is to minimise the number of "weedy" plants being sold by retailers.

Under the RPMS biosecurity officers visited nurseries and other plant retail outlets to ensure NPPA commitments were being met. NPPA plants are generally classified as Unwanted

Organisms under the Act and are therefore banned from propagation, sale and distribution within New Zealand at a national level. There is no requirement that they be included in a RPMP.

**Support of the National Pest Plant Accord will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

#### ***Education and Advice***

Many pests do not pose a significant threat to the economy or to the environment or are beyond controlling at a landscape level. Therefore, they are not contained with RPMP's but can still impact on people's quality of life, enjoyment of their homes or on cultural values. Under the RPMS the residents of the Tasman and Nelson areas received advice from Council biosecurity staff on the management of a wide range of pests. Typical examples include wasps nesting in walls and rats in a roof. In some situations Council biosecurity staff provide direct assistance (particularly wasps) and in others they provide advice or direction.

Pest education and control literature is produced and is distributed through community papers, council websites and brochures.

**Education and advice on non-RPMP pest species will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

#### ***National Biosecurity Response Capability Network***

The Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI) takes the lead when a new pest establishes in New Zealand. However, often those pests quickly establish at multiple sites requiring greater resources (people and equipment) than MPI has immediately available (eg, Velvetleaf). In these situations, MPI generally calls on assistance from the biosecurity staff of the relevant regional council. While this assistance is paid for by MPI at an agreed national rate, it diverts regional biosecurity staff from RPMP programmes to a national response.

**National responses on non-RPMP pest species will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### **Pest Species previously contained within the Regional Pest Management Strategy but not within the Regional Pest Management Plan Proposal**

#### **Argentine Ants and Darwin's Ants**

Argentine and Darwin's ants were classed as containment pests in the RPMS, however it was not equitable to enforce control on private landowners given the extent of the infestation (4000 plus households) and the cost of control (approximately \$150 per household per year for bait alone). As a consequence, biosecurity activity related to ants consisted mainly of education and advice on control through mail outs, information posted on council websites and responding to telephone calls and service requests. A regular monitoring survey was also undertaken to gauge and advise on the current extent of the ant infestation and its rate of spread. Pathways allowing the spread of ants have also been identified over time and measures put in place to reduce the rate of further spread.

**Education, advice, and regular survey of Argentine and Darwin ant distribution will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

#### **Australian Magpie**



Australian Magpies are a widespread and highly mobile species. They are territorial and aggressive. They compete with and displace native birds and have been known to attack birds and even humans.

There are currently few suitable control tools to manage magpies at a landscape scale. At a local scale or individual property scale they can be trapped, and large numbers are caught annually by some individual landowners. Under the RPMS the councils supported those landowners who wished to undertake control of Magpies on their land by providing loan traps and call birds.

**Advice and the loan of Australian Magpie call birds and traps will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### **Brushtail Possum (outside Waimea Estuary)**

Brushtail Possums are widespread throughout the area, although generally not in high densities. While being principally foliar browsers, they are also opportunist feeders and will prey on invertebrates and small birds. In high densities they can cause extensive damage to native and plantation forest and are also a vector for bovine tuberculosis. Possum control related to the presence of bovine tuberculosis is the responsibility of OSPRI New Zealand Limited (previously the Animal Health Board).

Under the RPMS the councils provided advice and loaned out traps. Other control is undertaken by pest trapping groups and commercial trappers of possum skins and fur. Possums produce an average of 1.5 offspring per year, so rapid population increase does not occur. However, it is accepted that if Brushtail Possum numbers increase significantly, assistance with landscape scale control may become necessary.

**Advice to residents, loan of traps, and support of pest trapping groups will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### **Feral Cats (outside Waimea Estuary)**

Feral cats (or in fact all cats) are currently widespread throughout the area. Cats are major predators feeding on a wide range of native and introduced birds and animals. There is also issues from dumping of unwanted domestic cats and kittens in rural areas to become feral.

There are legal and equity issues to be addressed requiring landowners to control these cats, particularly as trapping techniques cannot exclude domestic cats from being caught.

Cat management needs a comprehensive package starting with the ability to identify and control domestic cats so they can be “owned and managed” (the owner is responsible). When domestic cats can be quickly distinguished from feral cats, then other cat management actions can be applied to non-domestic cats.

In order to progress cat management, laws or by-laws will need to be developed. Local Government New Zealand has resolved to request Parliament to introduce national cat control laws and in the meantime Greater Wellington Regional Council has introduced a by-law requiring mandatory microchipping of domestic cats and placing limits on cat numbers.

Under the RPMS feral cats in rural areas were classed as a containment pest. However, control was limited to the provision of advice and traps (only in rural areas).

**Advice and loan of cat traps in rural areas will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### **Mustelids (Ferrets, Stoats and Weasels)**

Mustelids are active hunters and can prey on native birds, rabbits, reptiles and insects. They are distributed throughout the area and are highly mobile and difficult to locate and control. Stoats and weasels also have the ability to swim large distances and climb trees. Inspections are unlikely to find any Mustelids and to enforce a landowner to carry out control would be unreasonable.

Most Mustelid control to date is undertaken by volunteer trapping groups or by the Department of Conservation on their lands. Under the RPMS, staff provide advice to the public and loan out kill traps. The control of Mustelids is better dealt with by supporting trapping programmes.

**Advice to residents, loan of kill traps, and support of pest trapping groups will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP.**

### **Rabbits and Hares**

Rabbits damage pastures and hares can damage and can kill young trees. Both species are widespread throughout the district, although they are generally in low numbers. Control is generally achieved through shooting or trapping. The introduction of Rabbit Haemorrhagic Disease (RHD) into New Zealand has suppressed rabbit numbers for many years, although recently numbers have increased in some areas indicating resistance to the strain of RHD introduced.

Under the RPMS Council activity has generally related to providing advice to the public.

**Advice will continue as a work programme outside the provisions of the new RPMP. If the K5 strain of RHD is approved for release in New Zealand, releases of the K5 strain will be considered in areas of high rabbit density within this area.**

### **Programmes not previously within the Regional Pest Management Strategy which have merit but will not meet national policy direction requirements**

#### **Support of Pest and Weed Control on High Value Sites**

Both Tasman and Nelson councils have undertaken extensive survey programmes of sites which potentially have significant vegetation or habitats present. Many of these areas are subject to widespread plant pests and in particular, climbing and smothering species. Requiring owners of these sites to undertake extensive pest control to protect regional or national values is not equitable, especially where other landowners with similar significant areas have refused such surveys. Both councils have provided some landowner assistance towards pest plant control on these sites but in order to make progress more and better targeted funding is needed.

**It is intended that in both Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council widespread pests within significant natural areas will be managed through biocontrol and a well targeted and developed programme of support to landowners provided outside the RPMP.**

## Pathway Management

Pest species are often distributed by human activities (vectors) such as the movement of material or equipment from place to place. Examples include the movement of rock from quarries to road or river margins or the movement of agricultural equipment between properties. The 2012 amendments to the Act provided for the preparation of regional Pathway Management Plans which if prepared would focus on managing the activity which moves the pest rather than focusing on the pest species itself. While some vectors are effectively managed at a regional level, others (i.e. vehicles and boats) are better managed at a national level.

The Regional Pest Management Joint Committee was established to oversee the preparation of the Regional Pest Management Strategy Proposal and **not** a Pathway Management Plan and therefore limited work has been done assessing pathway management options

**Both Tasman District and Nelson City councils will investigate potential pathway management opportunities.**

## Costs

Activities previously undertaken under the provision of RPMS and its associated Operational Plan were funded out of the council's past pest management allocations. Therefore, continuation of these services is not an additional cost to the RPMP.

Developing new programmes for cat management, the protection of significant natural areas or development of pathway management plans are new and additional work. If these programmes are pursued they will require Tasman District Council and/or Nelson City Council approval for new work programmes and provision of additional funding.



**8.5 REFERRAL OF SAXTON FIELD COMMITTEE MINUTES AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

Decision Required

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Susan Edwards, Community Development Manager
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-20

**1 Summary**

- 1.1 The Saxton Field Committee met on 30 August. I have attached the minutes of the open meeting to this report (**Attachment 1**). The minutes contain two recommendations to this Council. I have attached copies of the reports relating to those two matters (**Attachments 2 and 3**), so that Councillors have the background to the matters for your consideration.
- 1.2 The first matter is a recommendation to the Council to agree to a 50/50 split for funding capital and renewals projects and for funding operating activities at Saxton Field. The Committee and staff from both Councils consider that a 50/50 split is fair, given that Tasman District's population now exceeds Nelson City's and that we are finding that Saxton Field facilities are used by people from across Tasman District, including from Golden Bay, Motueka, Tapawera and Murchison.
- 1.3 The second matter relates to an in principle decision to adopt a list of new and renewal capital works for inclusion in the Long Term Plan 2018-2028 draft budgets. Council has previously indicated that new and renewal capital works projects at Saxton Field should not exceed the amount of principal being paid off the existing loans relating to the complex. That figures is approximately \$3.2 million over the coming ten years. The proposed projects list and budget comply with this requirement. Nelson City Council staff are currently undertaking consultation with sport and recreation groups and may suggest some amendments to the project list in the coming months. Nelson City Council staff have also raised some concerns with stage 2 of the Champion Road/Saxton Drive link project being deferred until year 7. These concerns relate to stormwater and drainage issues, street lighting, traffic flows, bus turning, and connectivity with the rest of Saxton Field. These matters are why we are seeking an in principle decision at this stage. The decision will enable staff to put some figures into the Long Term Plan draft budgets in the meantime.
- 1.4 I have not attached the minutes of the confidential part of the meeting. There were two items discussed in the confidential session. The first related to the appointment of the Independent Chairperson for the Committee. The Committee considered a number of high calibre applicants for the position. The Committee appointed Judene Edgar to the role. The second item related to a lease agreement on Nelson City Council's portion of Saxton Field. The recommendation on that matter has been referred to Nelson City Council for consideration.

<b>2 Draft Resolution</b>
---------------------------

**That the Full Council**

1. receives the Referral of the Saxton Field Committee Minutes and Recommendations Report RCN17-09-20 and
2. notes the recommendations to the Tasman District Council contained in the minutes of the Saxton Field Committee meeting on 30 August (Attachment 1 to this report); and
3. approves the funding split for Saxton Field Capital and Renewals Projects (excluding any community contribution payable), and Operations and Maintenance activities, as from 1 July 2018, at 50% from Nelson City and 50% from Tasman District, subject to Nelson City Council passing a similar resolution; and
4. approves, in principle, the capital works programme for Saxton Field contained in Attachment 3 to this report for incorporation into Council's draft budgets as part of the Long Term Plan 2018-2028 process, subject to Nelson City Council passing a similar resolution.

<b>3 Attachments</b>
----------------------

- |  |     |
|--|-----|
| 1. Saxton Field Committee Minutes 30/08/2017                               | 199 |
| 2. Saxton Field Funding Split report                                       | 207 |
| 3. Draft Saxton Field Capital Programme for Inclusion in LTP draft budgets | 231 |




---

**MINUTES**  
of the  
**SAXTON FIELD COMMITTEE MEETING**  
held  
**9.30 am, Wednesday, 30 August 2017**  
at  
**Saxton Netball Pavilion, Stoke, Nelson**

---

**Present:** Councillors T King, K Maling (Tasman District Council),  
Councillors T Skinner, G Noonan (Nelson City Council)

**In Attendance:** Tasman District Council: Community Development Manager (Susan Edwards), Reserves & Assets Projects Officer (Glenn Thorn), Executive Assistant (Tracey Barron)  
Nelson City Council: Community Services Manager (Chris Ward), Property Projects Advisor (Ian Wallace), Manager Capital Projects (Shane Davies), Property, Parks and Facilities Asset Planner (Paul Harrington), Property and Facilities Asset Planner (Jock Edmondson)

**Part Attendance:** Leases Officer (Jules Read), Policy Advisor (Gabrielle Thorpe), Manager Parks and Facilities (Rosie Bartlett)

#### **1 OPENING, WELCOME**

Meeting opened at 9.35am. Susan Edwards, Community Development Manager, chaired the initial part of the meeting, welcoming everyone in attendance. Hayden Bryant, Facility Manager Saxton Stadium, provided a safety briefing of the Netball Pavilion.

#### **2 APOLOGIES AND LEAVE OF ABSENCE**

Nil

#### **8 REPORTS**

##### **8.1 Appointment of Chairperson for 30 August 2017 meeting**

This report was taken as read. Members appointed Cr Tim King to Chair the meeting.

---

**Moved Cr Maling/Cr Skinner**

**SFC17-08-7**

**That the Saxton Field Committee**

- 1. receives the Appointment of Chairperson for 30 August 2017 meeting report SFC17-08-01; and**
- 2. appoints Cr King as Chairperson of the 30 August 2017 meeting.**

**CARRIED**

Cr King took over chairing the meeting.

**3 PUBLIC FORUM**

Malcom Saunders and Murray Cameron spoke to the Committee on the proposed Champion Green Pavilion project. Plans for the project had previously been circulated by email to Committee members, and Nelson City Council and Tasman District Council staff. Mr Cameron advised the Committee that the Tasman Wheelers Cycling Club had formed the Champion Green Pavilion Group which represented several sporting groups. Mr Cameron and Mr Saunders tabled the Champion Green pavillion and in-line skating track proposals and requested the opportunity to discuss the proposals further. Mr Saunders advised the plans provided were drawn by Alan Bartlett, Architect.

**4 DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST**

Nil

**5 LATE ITEMS**

Nil

**6 CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES**

A question was raised with regard to the link road from Champion Road to the Velodrome and which financial year's budget the project is in. Ms Edwards advised the first stage of the link road from Champion Road to the Velodrome was provided for in the last financial year but the funding is proposed to be carried forward by the two Councils into the current year's budget. The project includes the provision of a walkway link from the Velodrome to Saxton Drive.

**Moved Cr Skinner/Cr Maling**

**SFC17-08-8**

**That the open minutes of the Saxton Field Committee meeting held on Wednesday, 14 February 2017, be confirmed as a true and correct record of the meeting.**

**CARRIED**

**7 PRESENTATIONS**

Nil



**8 REPORTS (Continued)****8.2 Saxton Field Capital Development Projects, Operations and Maintenance Funding Split for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils**

Ms Edwards took this report as read.

Ms Edwards advised that population estimates show the Nelson and Tasman regions populations were now fairly equal. She noted that the Saxton Field facilities are being used for some sporting codes by people living in Golden Bay and Murchison. The Golden Bay and Murchison communities had previously been excluded from the funding formula for the complex. Given these matters a 50-50 split is considered by staff at both Councils to be appropriate moving forward.

A question was raised on how often the funding split was reviewed. Ms Edwards advised there has previously been no specific set date for a review.

**Moved Cr Maling/Cr Noonan  
SFC17-08-9**

**That the Saxton Field Committee:**

1. receives the report SFC17-08-02 Saxton Field Capital Development Projects, Operations and Maintenance Funding Split for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils (R7617) and its attachment A31270; and
2. recommends to the two Councils:

**That the Tasman District and Nelson City Councils approve the funding split for Saxton Field Capital Projects and Renewals (excluding any community contribution payable), and Operations and Maintenance accounts, as from 1 July 2018, at 50% from Nelson City and 50% from Tasman District, subject to both Nelson City and Tasman District Councils passing this resolution.**

**CARRIED**

**8.3 Proposed Saxton Field Capital Works Programme for Consultation Through Long Term Plans 2018-2028**

Ms Edwards introduced the report. She noted that the Capital Works Programme is heavily loaded over the first five years of the Long Term Plan draft budgets. Ms Edwards advised the Committee they may wish to consider spreading the projects more evenly over the 10 year period. She suggested three projects that the Committee may wish to consider moving out, including the Champion Drive Link, the Champion Green facility and the BMX track.

Discussion ensued on if there was a need to have a Pavilion for the BMX track and how much of the \$385,00 was Pavilion cost.

The Committee noted that the Tasman Wheelers had advised the proposed Champion Green Pavilion was for multi use by multiple codes, so this could include BMX track users.

The Committee was of the view that there are already a number of pavilions on site at Saxton Field and that some of these could possibly be under-utilised.

Discussion ensued on the in-line skating track and the Committee noted that staff had proposed that the track be outside of the proposed 10 year budget for the upcoming Long Term Plan.

The Committee agreed immediate action was required to seal the car parking area at the new small bore and cricket facility. Staff were asked to arrange for this to be completed as a matter of priority. Staff would investigate whether it would be possible to seal the small bore and cricket facility carpark from within the current financial year's budget for Saxton Field.

For clarity Mr Thorn advised number 18 on the capital works programme was for Alliance Green car parking was not for the small bore and cricket facility parking.

Following the discussion, suggested amendments were made to the following items on the Capital Works Programme:

- Item no.2 - The Champion Drive Link (stage 2 from the Velodrome to Saxton Drive) to be moved out to Year 7 (2024/2025) of the upcoming Long Term Plan; and
- Item no.15 - BMX track development budget in Year 4 (2021/2022) to be reduced to remove the Pavilion component.

**Moved Cr Noonan/Cr Skinner**  
**SFC17-08-10**

**That the Saxton Field Committee**

- 1. receives the Proposed Saxton Field Capital Works Programme for Consultation Through Long Term Plans 2018-2028 report; and**
- 2. recommends to Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council that they adopt, in principal, the capital works programme for Saxton Field contained in Attachment 1 to Report SFC17-08-03 for incorporation into their draft budgets as part of their Long Term Plan 2018-2028 processes, instructing staff to make the following amendments prior to reporting the recommendation to the two Councils:**
  - a. move out the \$967,000 for constructing the road link from the Velodrome to Saxton Drive to Year 7 (2024/2025); and**
  - b. provide for the BMX track in 2021/2022 but remove the associated pavilion costs; and**
  - c. discuss the scope and budget for the Champion Green proposed facility with the user groups.**

**CARRIED**

#### **8.4 Saxton Velodrome Funding**

Mr Thorn spoke to the Committee on the updated Velodrome budget and the request for additional funding from Nelson City Council. He noted that Tasman District Council had already agreed to provide its share of the additional project cost.

Mr Thorn noted that there will be some small contract savings as the project is finalised and that he was of the view that the project cost would not increase above the \$2.042 million.

Mr Thorn told the Committee there was as yet no agreed date with Downer for sealing of the velodrome, but that it was likely to be in October.

A question was raised by the Committee on the overspend and increase in funds required from both Councils, and why this was requested as 'unbudgeted' funds. Mr Ward spoke to the Committee advising that once a funding split was in place there was no ability to change that arrangement without coming back to Council for approval. Following discussion Councillors asked to remove 'unbudgeted' from the resolution and Nelson City Council would look to fund the \$52,000 required from within existing budgets.

**Moved Cr Noonan/Cr Maling  
SFC17-08-11**

**That the Saxton Field Committee**

1. receives the Saxton Velodrome Funding report SFC17-08-04 and the attached report from Nelson City Council (R8060); and
2. recommends to the Nelson City Council that it:
  - 2.1 approves an increase in Nelson City Council's contribution for the Saxton Velodrome project of \$52,000 (up to a maximum of \$879,000); and
  - 2.2 notes that Tasman District Council has increased its contribution to \$755,540.

**CARRIED**

**8.5 Update on Saxton Field Capital Projects**

Mr Thorn provided a verbal update on the Saxton Velodrome project status.

A question was asked on seepage on the track. Mr Thorn advised there had been a one metre patch on the western corner which has been assessed by a geotechnical engineer who at this stage did not think it would be a concern.

Mr Thorn advised that mega flow and a cut-off drain had been installed to eliminate rainwater seepage issues.

In reply to a question asked on the Velodrome being open to the public, Mr Thorn advised that the Velodrome would be available to the public provided a scheduled event booking was not taking place.

Jock Edmondson advised the tender for the Champion Drive link to the Velodrome was underway. He noted that the walkways were also about to go to tender. The walkways will increase pedestrian ease of getting to each part of Saxton Field and reduce people walking on the internal roads.

Discussion ensued on carparks and bus parks.

It was noted planting of Saxton Creek had started.

**Moved Cr Maling/Cr Skinner**  
SFC17-08-12

**That the Saxton Field Committee**

1. receives the Update on Saxton Field Capital Projects Report SFC17-08-05.

**CARRIED**

## 9 CONFIDENTIAL SESSION

### 9.1 Procedural motion to exclude the public

**Moved Cr Noonan/Cr Skinner**  
SFC17-08-13

**THAT** the public be excluded from the following part(s) of the proceedings of this meeting. The general subject of each matter to be considered while the public is excluded, the reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter, and the specific grounds under section 48(1) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 for the passing of this resolution follows.

This resolution is made in reliance on section 48(1)(a) of the Local Government Official Information and Meetings Act 1987 and the particular interest or interests protected by section 6 or section 7 of that Act which would be prejudiced by the holding of the whole or relevant part of the proceedings of the meeting in public, as follows:

#### 9.1 Appointment of Independent Chair to Saxton Field Committee

Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter	Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)	Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution
The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.	s7(2)(a) - The withholding of the information is necessary to protect the privacy of natural persons, including that of a deceased person.	s48(1)(a)  The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.

#### 9.2 Community Lease - Change to Lease Term - Target Shooting Nelson

Reason for passing this resolution in relation to each matter	Particular interest(s) protected (where applicable)	Ground(s) under section 48(1) for the passing of this resolution
The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good reason for withholding exists under section 7.	s7(2)(i) - The withholding of the information is necessary to enable the local authority to carry on, without prejudice or disadvantage, negotiations	s48(1)(a)  The public conduct of the part of the meeting would be likely to result in the disclosure of information for which good

Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council - Minutes of Saxton Field Committee – 30 August 2017

	(including commercial and industrial negotiations).	reason for withholding exists under section 7.
--	---	--

**CARRIED**

The meeting concluded at 10.55 am

Date Confirmed:

Chair:

Unconfirmed





## 8.2 SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS, OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE FUNDING SPLIT FOR NELSON CITY AND TASMAN DISTRICT COUNCILS

Decision Required

<b>Report To:</b>	Saxton Field Committee
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	30 August 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Susan Edwards, Community Development Manager
<b>Report Number:</b>	SFC17-08-02

### 1 Summary

- 1.1 The purpose of this report is to consider the funding split for Saxton Field capital projects and renewals, and operations and maintenance between the two Councils and recommend the adoption of the proposed funding split to the two Councils.
- 1.2 Please refer attached report (Attachment 1) from Nelson City Council staff.

### 2 Draft Resolution

**That the Saxton Field Committee:**

1. receives the report SFC17-08-02 Saxton Field Capital Development Projects, Operations and Maintenance Funding Split for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils (R7617) and its attachment A31270; and
2. recommends to the two Councils:

**That the Tasman District and Nelson City Councils:**

approve the funding split for Saxton Field Capital Projects and Renewals (excluding any community contribution payable), and Operations and Maintenance accounts, as from 1 July 2018, at 50% from Nelson City and 50% from Tasman District, subject to both Nelson City and Tasman District Councils passing this resolution.

### 3 Attachments

1. Saxton Field Funding Split Report Nelson City Council June 2017

**Saxton Field Committee**

14 June 2017

REPORT R7617

---

**Saxton Field Capital Development Projects, Operations and Maintenance Funding Split for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils**


---

**1. Purpose of Report**

- 1.1 To update the current Saxton Field capital development, operations and maintenance funding splits for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils.

**2. Summary**

- 2.1 The current operations and maintenance funding split is Tasman District 36.7% and Nelson City 63.3%. The funding split for capital projects is 47% TDC and 53% NCC. This report considers the subnational population estimates at 30 June 2016 and recommends that both funding splits move to 50% from Tasman District and 50% from Nelson City.

**3. Recommendation*****That the Committee***

***Receives the report Saxton Field Capital Development Projects, Operations and Maintenance Funding Split for Nelson City and Tasman District Councils (R7617) and its attachment A31270.***

Recommendation to Nelson City and Tasman District Councils

***That the Councils***

***Approve the funding split for Saxton Field Capital Projects and Renewals, and Operations and Maintenance accounts, as from 1 July 2018, at 50% from Nelson City and 50% from Tasman District, subject to both Nelson City and Tasman District Councils passing this resolution.***

R7617

1



#### 4. Background

##### Funding Policy

4.1 The Regional Facilities Plan was adopted by both Nelson City and Tasman District Councils in October 2002. It includes a section, 'The Funding Assessment Tool' which addresses how much each Council should pay towards regional facilities. A copy of the Funding Assessment Tool is attached to this report. (Attachment 1)

4.2 The Plan states that the funding split between the two Councils for regional facilities should be calculated as follows:

*'Cost share is based on an analysis of two simple issues: location of the proposed development and the expected catchment of users.*

- 35% of the funding split is based on proposed location.
- 65% of the funding split is based on catchment.'

Where the proposed location is Saxton Field this is treated as a neutral location with both Councils sharing the 35% of costs equally.

4.3 Location of facility

At Saxton Field the location was determined to be neutral with 35% of the total cost to be allocated evenly between the two Councils. In 2006 the Regional Funding Forum resolved to recommend to the two Councils that the funding split for all facilities at Saxton Field be on a catchment basis only. This resolution which increased its share of costs was never endorsed by Nelson City Council but funding decisions through the Funding Forum continued over time based solely on accessible population and ignoring the 35% location factor.

4.4 Catchment - Accessible Population

The catchment factor recognises that some parts of Tasman District are remote and access to Saxton Field is reduced. The Forum agreed that only the relatively accessible population should contribute. Golden Bay, Takaka, Golden Downs, Lake Rotoroa, Murchison, Tapawera, and Jackett Island are currently excluded.

4.5 Capital Development Projects

At Saxton Field funding applicants are required to provide 20% of capital costs with the remaining 80% divided between the two Councils.

Previous significant capital projects at Saxton Field undertaken with reference to the Funding Policy include the two hockey turfs, Saxton Stadium, the athletics track, Saxton Oval Pavilion, and the velodrome with the individual funding splits updated according to the population data at that time.

Capital projects splits have been updated more regularly as decisions were made to proceed with each individual project. The last project to be considered was the velodrome where the 80% Councils charge was determined to be divided 47% from TDC and 53% from NCC.

#### 4.6 Operations and Maintenance

Operations and maintenance funding has not been updated for some time. Activities are ongoing and funding is currently divided between Tasman at 36.7% and Nelson at 63.3%.

The total operations and maintenance budget for both Councils was approximately \$1,033,000 for the 2015/16 financial year.

### 5. Discussion

#### Population

- 5.1 Tasman's estimated population as at 30 June 2016 was 50,200. Nelson's was 50,600.
- 5.2 If the populations of Golden Bay, Takaka, Golden Downs, Lake Rotoroa, Murchison, Tapawera and Jackitt Island are exempted the accessible figure for Tasman is reduced to 42,420.
- 5.3 This results in a current accessible population comparison of 45.6% TDC to 54.4% NCC.
- 5.4 As the populations increase, the gap is closing with Tasman's population predicted to continue to increase faster than that of Nelson.
- 5.5 Initially it was felt that residents of distant areas were less likely to use Saxton Field but as the reserve has developed over time into a true regional facility, sports people are travelling more, particularly for hockey, athletics, cricket and softball.

R7617

3

### Funding Split Options

5.6 Three funding options have been considered and applied to the operations and maintenance total of \$1,033,000 for both Councils.

5.7 **As per original funding policy.**

Applying a funding split based on the latest accessible population figures (45.6% TDC to 54.4% NCC) to the 2015/16 operations and maintenance expenditure for Saxton Field, as per the Regional Funding Policy, would result in the following:

	Contribution total	Total	Tasman	Nelson
Where is the facility located?	35%	\$361,550	\$175,000	\$175,000
Where will users come from?	65%	\$671,450	(45.6%) \$306,181	(54.4%) \$365,269
Final Funding split	100%	\$1,033,000	\$471,400	\$528,600

5.8 **As per the Saxton Field Committees current practice.**

Applying the accessible population figures as per the Regional Funding Forum's practice in recent years:

	Total	Tasman 45.6%	Nelson 54.4%
Where will users come from?	\$1,033,000	\$471,048	\$561,952
Final Funding split	\$1,033,000	\$447,048	\$561,952

5.9 **Applying a 50% TDC : 50% NCC split**

	Total	Tasman 50%	Nelson 50%
Funding split	\$1,033,000	\$516,500	\$516,500

5.10 Comparing the three options:

**Option 1: Apply funding split as per Funding Policy**

Advantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fits the Policy previously adopted by both Councils</li> </ul>
Risks and Disadvantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Not recently used for Saxton Field projects, operations and maintenance.</li> <li>Giving weight to accessibility may be no longer relevant</li> </ul>
<b>Option 2: Apply funding split as previously adopted by Saxton Field Committee</b>	
Advantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Continues a method previously used for capital projects</li> </ul>
Risks and Disadvantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Giving weight to accessibility may be no longer relevant</li> </ul>
<b>Option 3: Apply 50:50 funding split – this is the preferred option</b>	
Advantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simple to apply</li> <li>Encourages equity in Council partnership</li> </ul>
Risks and Disadvantages	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Does not recognise a small number of residents with difficult access</li> </ul>

- 5.11 Officers from both Councils discussed the content of this report at a recent Saxton Field Working Party Meeting and recommend that in the interests of simplicity and equity a 50%: 50% funding split be adopted with the new figures implemented as from 1 July 2018.

## 6. Conclusion

- 6.1 As the population continues to increase, the gap is closing with Tasman predicted to continue to increase faster than that of Nelson.
- 6.2 As the reserve has developed over time into a true regional facility, sports people are travelling more, particularly for hockey, athletics, cricket and softball.
- 6.3 In the interests of developing an equal partnership for the governance of Saxton Field it is recommended that as from 1 July 2018 a 50%: 50% funding split be adopted for operations and maintenance and for capital projects and renewals.

Andrew Petheram

R7617

5

**Property, Parks and Facilities Asset Manager**

**Attachments**

Attachment 1: Nelson / Tasman Regional Facilities Funding Assessment Tool - A31270

6

R7617

<b>Important considerations for decision making</b>	
<b>1. Fit with Purpose of Local Government</b>	The recommendation supports the current and future needs for regional recreation facilities in an equitable manner.
<b>2. Consistency with Community Outcomes and Council Policy</b>	This recommendation is consistent with the Long Term Plans, Annual Plans and Community Outcomes of both Councils and Nelson 2060.
<b>3. Risk</b>	This recommendation is likely to address financial responsibility for the provision of regional recreation facilities and unlikely to result in adverse consequences.
<b>4. Financial impact</b>	Changes to operational and maintenance expenditure will be funded from rates by both Councils. The source of capital expenditure will be determined separately by each Council.
<b>5. Degree of significance and level of engagement</b>	This matter is of low significance. Saxton Field is not a strategic asset and an adjustment to the funding contributions from Nelson City and Tasman District is minor.
<b>6. Inclusion of Māori in the decision making process</b>	Māori have not been involved in the formulation of this recommendation.
<b>7. Delegations</b>	<p>The Saxton Field Committee has the power to recommend to the Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Financial contributions for the operations, maintenance and capital development of the reserve</li> </ul>

R7617

7

---

**Nelson / Tasman Regional Facilities  
Funding Assessment Tool**

**For**  
**Nelson City Council**  
**Tasman District Council**  
**The Community Trust**  
**Gaming Machine Funding Trusts of Nelson Region**

---

**Policy and Procedures Guide**

23.10.2002

**Table of Contents**

- 1. Introduction.....3**
- 2. Funding Forum Membership .....4**
  - 2.1. Advisory Members.....4
  - 2.2. Staff Resources .....4
- 3. Forum Rules .....5**
- 4. Application Process .....6**
  - 4.1. Funding Applications .....6
  - 4.2. Planning Tools .....7
- 5. Application Guide .....13**
  - 5.1. Need .....13
  - 5.2. Participation .....13
  - 5.3. Feasibility .....13
  - 5.4. Impacts.....14
  - 5.5. Declaration .....16



## 1. Introduction

This Tool was approved in 2002 by Nelson City and Tasman District Council as part of the Regional Facilities Plan. A 'principles-based' planning approach is used in planning for facility provision to guide the assessment, consideration and decision-making regarding facility issues by the councils and the Funding Forum. The Application Guide implicitly integrates these principles into the application process to ensure a consistent approach in both the planning and the support of facility developments. The principles are:

Principle 1: Co-location and shared facilities replacing dispersed and duplicated provision

Principle 2: Partnering to maximise community benefits

Principle 3: Targeted renewal and refurbishment funding

Principle 4: Rationalisation of supply of facilities

Principle 5: Improved communication and co-ordination

Principle 6: Redevelopment of compromise facilities to improve functional performance

The Application Guide has been designed so that potential applicants can identify the potential for the endorsement of their proposals, and for requesting contributions towards capital and/or operational costs. The guide is comprehensive and, as a result, may include questions that - due to the nature or scale of a particular project - are considered to be either irrelevant or judged as excessively arduous. The funding forum has the option to waive requirements for specific evidence as appropriate. However, the core questions need to be addressed in the application.

## 2. Funding Forum Membership

Members will be appointed by the respective organisations listed below.

Two appointees from each of:

- Nelson City Council (NCC)
- Tasman District Council (TDC)
- The Community Trust (the Trust)
- Gaming Machine Funding Trusts (Nelson-Tasman) (GMFT)

Plus, a single representative from the local regional office of the New Zealand Lottery Grants Board (NZLGB).

### 2.1. Advisory Members

The Forum from time to time may wish to invite key individuals with particular knowledge and/or perspective to attend a Forum meeting or meetings in an *ex officio* capacity. The intent is for advisory members to assist the Forum in its understanding of a topical issue or application.

### 2.2. Staff Resources

The Forum does not have a formal staff structure. It is supported as required by appropriate council officers from Nelson and Tasman, in an *ex officio* capacity. Duties include recording outcomes from Forum meetings and reporting to the Forum on applications.

### 3. Forum Rules

1. The Forum is a voluntary group and is not intended to incur costs or receive revenue.
2. The Forum is an informal group and members are appointed by the funding organisations as follows:
 

Two appointees from:

  - Nelson City Council
  - Tasman District Council
  - The Community Trust
  - Gaming Machine Funding Trusts (Nelson-Tasman)

Plus, a single representative from the local regional office of the New Zealand Lottery Grants Board.
3. The term of each members appointment is at the discretion of the appointing body.
4. Nelson City Council and Tasman District Council will appoint an officer (the *nominated officer*) to support the Forum with preparation of reports on applications and to receive inquiries from potential applicants. The officer will ensure that applications are completed in full before submitting them to the Forum for consideration.
5. The Forum decisions and recommendations are not binding on the organisations that provide appointees to the Forum.
6. The Forum will meet as required but not less than annually to consider *full applications* and meet on ad hoc basis to consider *preliminary notifications*.
7. The meetings will be closed to the public to facilitate information sharing between members. However, all recommendations would be released to the public. Any discussion in the meetings will be considered confidential.
8. An annual closing date for *full applications* will be set by the Forum and publicised by member organisations. The closing date would usually align with the Annual Plan requirements of Councils. In this first year there will not be a closing date but applications will be considered as required for the 2003/04 financial year. The closing date thereafter will be 31 August of each year.
9. Forum members will direct inquiries from potential applicants to the *nominated officer* of either Nelson City or Tasman District as appropriate.
10. Eligible regional arts, cultural, sport or recreation facility projects seeking funds from member organisations will be considered by the Forum.

#### 4. Application Process

##### 4.1. Funding Applications

The Funding Forum members prefer to assist organisations in a consistent manner. In order to help the Forum set priorities and make decisions about their support for leisure facilities in each and successive application rounds all facility proposals will be assessed against the criteria set out in a funding application form. This form will be developed to reflect the assessment criteria in the assessment tool and application guide.

A two-stage application process is proposed to minimise the risk of wasted effort and building undue expectations in the community regarding a proposed project.

##### 4.1.1. Preliminary Notification

All applicants are asked to forward a short summary of the key features of their application for consideration by the Funding Forum. The Funding Forum may offer several different levels of advice:

- The forum may decide to offer support for an independent feasibility assessment of the proposal.
- The applicant may be advised to not put in a full application due to replication or other issues.
- The applicant may be advised to complete a full application.
- The applicant may be encouraged to team up with other applicants or other existing agencies and their facilities to reduce duplication

A brief covering report will be prepared by the nominated council officer. Any positive advice offered by the Forum at this stage would not represent an endorsement of the final proposal. The potential applicant would also be advised of any specific exemptions regarding the provision of detailed information that would normally be required in the full application. The preliminary notification process would save all parties unnecessary effort.

Where the preliminary application does not receive positive support at this stage the applicants will be advised of the reasons and given the opportunity to resubmit an amended preliminary application.

##### 4.1.2. Full Application

A full application would be received from only those applicants who had achieved support at the preliminary notification stage. A report assessing the application would be prepared by the nominated officer to accompany the application when distributed to Forum members.

The scoring process is a tool to assist with clarifying the views of Forum members and provide a guideline. Each member of the Forum independently undertakes an assessment of the application against the Application Guide checklist and enters scores on a summary sheet (See Section 4.3). The Forum will convene to compare scores. Any scores that vary significantly from the rest of the members are discussed with a view to either reaching consensus by modifying the score or agreeing to disagree (very much a 'Delphi technique' approach). The scores are then combined to give a grand total.

The grand total for each project under consideration is then included in a schedule to rank the projects into high, medium and low groupings. An appropriate funding split between the member organisations is determined for each project that is supported by the Forum (usually high scoring projects). The projects recommended for support and their funding split are then forwarded to each member organisation of the Forum for consideration.

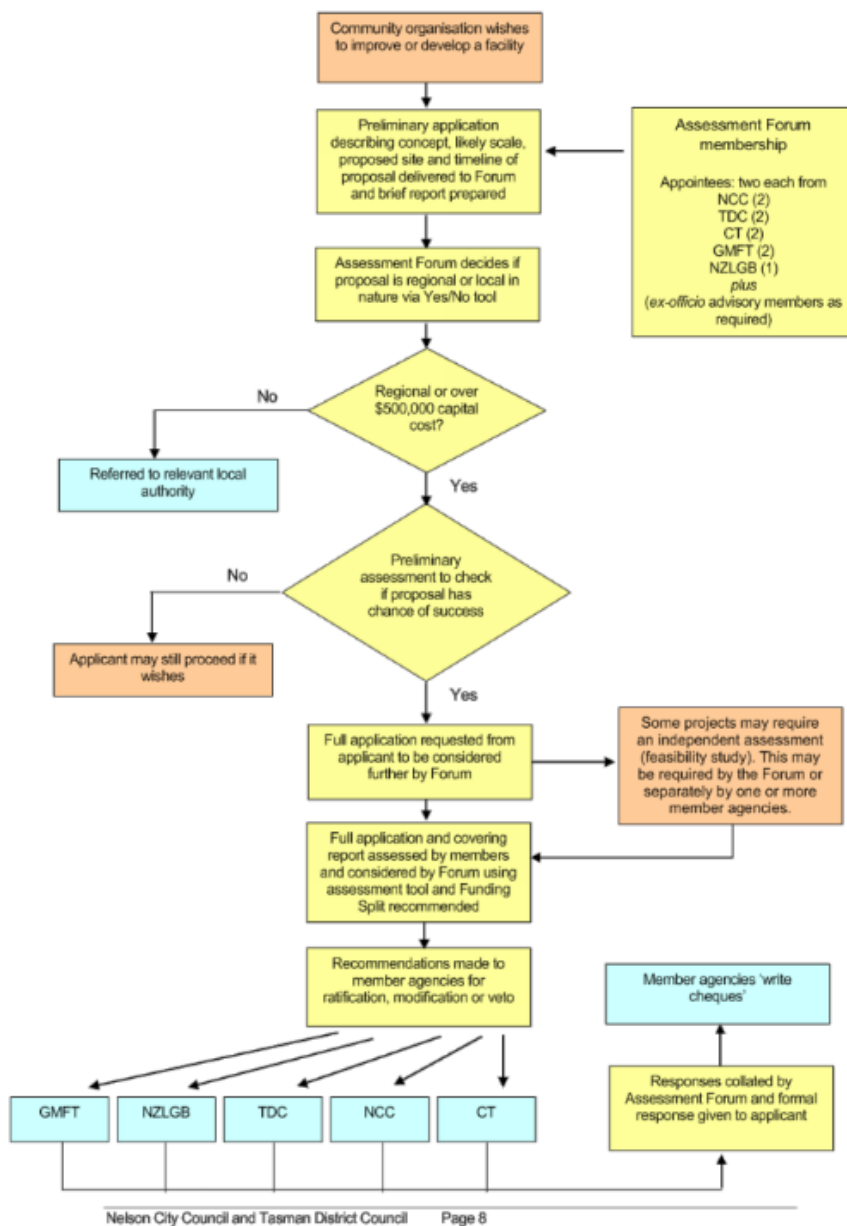
Medium and low scoring projects not supported in the funding round are informed of the areas requiring improvement in their applications and in most cases be offered the opportunity to reapply with a revised application to a future round.

#### 4.2. Planning Tools

Once an application is received, a set of planning tools are applied. The planning tools represent a three-stage process.

1. The Forum determines whether the proposal is a regional issue using the Yes/No Tool. Those regional proposals, or proposals seeking \$500,000 or more are considered by the Funding Forum, otherwise they are considered by the individual councils.
2. The Funding Forum assesses the funding priorities using the Application Assessment Tool.
3. The Forum then determines the recommended split of capital contribution between the Nelson and Tasman Councils using the Capital Contribution Split Tool. Each Council can then revisit priorities independently before final agreement is determined. There may need to be a joint council meeting to consider the capital contribution split.

The full assessment process is presented in the chart below.



#### 4.2.1. Identifying Regional Facilities: The Yes/No Tool

To identify whether the proposal is a cross-boundary issue, the following questions must be answered:

1. Does the proposal have certain elements that make it difficult to decide in which district the facility should be located?  
*If yes, it is **certainly** a cross-boundary issue.*
2. Will significant cost savings (including transport) be made if the proposal is co-operatively funded and promoted?  
*If yes, it is **certainly** a cross-boundary issue.*
3. Is the proposal promulgated by an organisation whose membership lies in both districts, or by organisations that are located in different districts?  
*If yes, it is **certainly** a cross-boundary issue.*
4. Is the proposal's catchment clearly region-wide?  
*If yes, it is **almost certainly** a cross-boundary issue.*
5. Is the proposal currently partially or fully duplicated in the other district?  
5a. If yes, will the new facility render the existing one superfluous or significantly improve the regional level of service?  
*If yes, it is **quite likely** a cross-boundary issue.*
6. Is the proposal a new concept for both districts? Is it unique?  
*If yes, it is **quite likely** a cross-boundary issue.*
7. Is the proposal a new level of service for both districts?  
*If yes, it is **quite likely** a cross-boundary issue.*
8. Can a higher level of service be achieved if the facility is not duplicated?  
*If yes, it is **possibly** a cross-boundary issue.*
9. Do the districts have difficulty agreeing whether it is a cross-boundary issue?  
*If yes, it is **probably** a cross-boundary issue.*

Assessors should analyse the number of 'yes' outcomes and react accordingly. The result should be self-evident.

**4.2.2. Application Assessment Tool**

Each criterion listed in the guide is given a score and a reliability rating for the information supplied by the applicant. The weighting given to the various elements will vary according to the nature of the proposal in relation to the Funding Forum members' priorities and policy outcomes. Not all points will be applicable to every proposed facility, but the main headings and sub headings should be addressed.

Organisations seeking support will be required to consider their needs in terms of each criterion considered by the assessment model. Each criterion (please refer to page 7) will be judged using three factors, listed below:

<b>Weighting: What relative priority does each factor have in relation to the relevant agency policy outcomes?</b>	
Not relevant	0
Exceptionally low importance	1
Below average importance	2
Moderate or average	3
Above average importance	4
Exceptionally high importance	5

<b>Reliability: Is the data provided reliable? Can it be verified or supported by other sources?</b>	
Information that is wholly objective fact and is verifiable by sources independent to the applicant or supplied by independent sources	4
Information that is mainly objective fact and is not easily verifiable by sources independent to the applicant	3
Information that is mainly subjective and is verifiable by sources independent to the applicant	2
Information that is wholly subjective opinion and is not easily verifiable by sources independent to the applicant	1

<b>Score: How well does the application rate on these criterion?</b>	
Not relevant	0
Exceptionally poor or low	1
Below average	2
Moderate or average	3
Above average	4
Exceptionally good or high	5



Example data have been entered below. The weight, reliability and score are multiplied across each row, and that sum is added in the 'total' column to a final score. Applications will be ranked according to their scores. However, due to funding limitations, high scoring and costly proposals would not be guaranteed financial support. In such cases, the Forum may decide to offer other forms of support (such as advocating with the applicant for funding from other sources).

Facility Proposal Assessment Tool				
	Weight	Reliability	Score	Total
<b>Community Need/ Support</b>				
1. Is there a significant level of unmet need in the community where the proposed facility is to be located?	4	4	2	32
2. Does the community support the proposed facility?	4	3	2	24
<b>Participation</b>				
3. What are the estimated participation levels in the activity or activities to be undertaken at the proposed facility?	4	2	3	24
4. Does the proposal address participation by traditionally under-represented people?	4	1	2	8
5. Does the proposal set targets for enhanced recreation participation?	2	2	5	20
<b>Feasibility Research &amp; Assessment</b>				
Is there an adequate feasibility study for the proposed facility, including:				
6. Needs assessment	1	2	3	6
7. Design and planning issues	4	1	2	8
8. An analysis of relevant trends	1	0	0	0
9. Sound financial and asset management planning	3	3	3	27
<b>Social Benefits</b>				
10. Will the proposed facility enhance community and individual wellbeing?	4	0	0	0
<b>Environmental Benefits</b>				
11. Will the proposed facility contribute to protecting and managing a sustainable environment or minimise its impact?	3	1	1	3
<b>Economic Benefits</b>				
12. Is the proposed facility economically sustainable?	1	1	1	1
13. Will the facility contribute to the local and/or regional economy?	1	1	1	1
<b>SUB TOTAL</b>				<b>154</b>
<b>Negative Impacts (subtraction from sub total)</b>				
13. Does the project have negative impacts on existing facilities?	4	2	2	16
<b>TOTAL SCORE</b>				<b>138</b>

**4.2.3. The Capital Contribution Split**

**The Split between Applicant and Council Contributions**

The New Zealand Lottery Grants Board and the Community Trust consider themselves to be 'top-up' funders, and their grants are usually conditional on a council capital funding contribution. The position of councils as 'up-front' funders, providing endorsement and momentum through a capital contribution for a facility' will therefore need to continue.

The level of capital contribution by the applicant through community fundraising, associated benefactors and sponsors vary greatly between community facilities that have been developed in the region. This is often described as the level of 'self-help' and it is essential that this is assessed within the context of the application, rather than as a predetermined threshold. This is because of the variability in the capacity of the applicant to contribute capital. The wide variability in the scale of project and circumstances of each case makes the setting of one level generally unrealistic.

However, Councils have a clear expectation of evident 'self-help' in the capital funding of the project by the applicant. The level of self-help will be assessed within the context of the capability of the applicant organisation, and efforts undertaken, to generate capital based on the nature and catchment of the project, and the membership of the organisation.

**The Split Between Councils for Regional Facilities**

Cost share is based on an analysis of two simple issues: location of the proposed development and the expected catchment of users. The table below is based on a funding issue costing \$700,000. The issues are weighted thus:

- 35% of the funding split is based on location. In the example below, the facility is based in Tasman and so 100% of 35% of the cost is to be funded by the TDC (ie, 35% of \$700,000 = \$245,000). This covers the prestige value of the facility being located in one District, and the economic benefits that accrue to the host District.
- 65% of the funding split is based on catchment. In the example, 40% of users are likely to be from Nelson, and so 40% of 65% of the cost is to be funded by the NCC (ie, 65% of \$700,000 = \$455,000, and 40% of \$455,000 = \$182,000).

	Contribution to total	Nelson	Tasman
1. Where is the facility located?	35%	0% (0\$)	100% (\$245,000)
2. Where will users come from?	65%	40% (\$182,000)	60% (\$273,000)
Final Funding split		\$182,000	\$518,000

Councils need to consider the relevance of the two issues and the weights given to each. However, this final analysis must be simple and used consistently.

## 5. Application Guide

This section details the issues each application should consider to ensure compatibility with the assessment tool and to provide the Forum with sufficient background information.

### 5.1. Need

**Is there a significant level of unmet need in the community where the proposed facility is to be located? Does the community support the proposed facility?**

The application should:

- Identify the proposed facility's geographic catchment and target group using demographic data and other significant factors e.g. youth
- Identify evidence that justifies the proposed facility?
- Provide evidence of community support, either generally or specifically, such as letters of support from organisations or individuals, community surveys etc.

### 5.2. Participation

**What are the estimated participation levels in the activity or activities to be undertaken at the proposed facility? Does the application address participation by traditionally under-represented people? Does the application set targets for enhanced recreation participation?**

Note: Participation can include a range of involvement such as playing/ performing through to spectating.

The application should:

- Define the goals and objectives of the proposed facility.
- Detail the number of participants and/or clubs or organisations currently involved in the activity and likely to be users of the proposed facility over the first 3 - 5 years.
- Identify any people or groups who will not be able to use the proposed facility, the reasons they will not be able to use the facility.
- Consider whether the proposed facility will encourage people to do more recreation and leisure activities.

### 5.3. Feasibility

**Is there an adequate feasibility study for the proposed facility?**

The feasibility study should:

- Address the questions listed in this guide and application process unless expressly excluded by the Forum.
- Provide evidence that the proposed facility is of the appropriate standard to meet the need.
- Describe the proposed facility and how it will be owned, managed and operated.
- Identify and describe the positive and negative impacts of the proposed facility.
- Set out location options and rationale for selected site.
- Set out all capital costs including planning, compliance, and construction costs.
- Set out operating and maintenance costs, including personnel, facility maintenance and renewal/refurbishment, equipment, services and consumable materials.
- Identify all confirmed and possible capital funding sources for the development of the proposed facility.

- Describe how the operation of the proposed facility will be financed with particular attention to the likely usage, probable income and expenditure and charges.
- If fees are to be charged for use, outline the pricing structure and its probable acceptability by users.
- Identify trends that will positively or negatively affect use and throughput levels.

#### How objective and reliable is the feasibility study?

- The feasibility study should:
- Identify who completed the feasibility study and their credentials.
  - Include a copy of the study brief and methodology.
  - Identify the sources of information.
  - Clearly identify all assumptions and describe the rationale behind each assumption.

### 5.4. Impacts

#### Will the proposed facility enhance community and individual wellbeing?

- The application should consider:
- The physical, emotional, spiritual or social benefits for users?
  - Whether people other than direct users will benefit from the proposed facility?
  - Whether individual benefits will have an overall community benefit?
  - Whether people who are potentially affected by the proposed facility have been consulted? Are there ways to overcome any effects?

#### Will the proposed facility contribute to protecting and managing a sustainable environment or minimise its impact? Is it compatible with surrounding land use?

- The application should:
- Recognise that environment includes physical resources such as land, water, air etc and intangibles such as levels of noise and amenity values (attractiveness, safety, etc).
  - Determine whether the proposed facility will effect any aspect of the environment? If so how?
  - Consider ways to minimise the effects of the proposed facility on the environment?
  - Will the proposed facility improve or protect the environment?

#### Is the proposed facility economically sustainable? Will the facility contribute to the local and/or District economy?

- The application should consider:
- How the proposed facility will be funded?
  - Whether the proposed facility will be financially self-sustaining (ie generate enough funds to maintain and operate)?
  - Whether the proposed facility will have any positive economic benefits? e.g. providing or using accommodation, restaurants, visitor attraction, decreasing maintenance costs, etc

#### Will the proposed facility promote a public good and/or benefit before a private good and/or benefit?

- The application should recognise that:
- A public good is one which cannot be fully charged for at the point of use, or use by one person does not prevent another person from also using it. A private good is one whose use can be controlled, and use by one person reduces the potential for use by others.

- A public benefit occurs when everybody benefits from the good or service while a private benefit occurs when a particular person or group is clearly the only beneficiary of a goods or service.
- Any proposed facility is unlikely to fit neatly into the above categories but they offer some guidance. The important point is that public funds should generate primarily public rather than private benefits.

**What land is required? If public open space is involved, will it continue to be available for public use?**

The application should make clear:

- Whether a public reserve is required for the proposed facility, and if so how much and where?
- Whether the proposed facility will prevent other people from free use of the reserve, or whether it will add to their enjoyment of the reserve?
- Whether private land could be used instead of a public reserve?

**Who will own, govern and manage the proposed facility?**

The application should:

- Describe the proposed ownership and governance structure
- Describe the proposed staffing structure
- Include a 3 year Business Plan for the facility
- Include details of the project management during design, construction and commissioning of the facility.

**What use is made of existing facilities? Are additional facilities required? What will be the anticipated impact on other similar facilities?**

The application should discuss:

- Whether existing facilities could be used to meet all or some of the need? If so, do they require modification? If so, what is their current usage and how might it be affected by the proposed facility? Will the project duplicate under-utilised facilities?
- Whether the proposed facility will require other facilities or services to operate?
- Whether any new facilities and services will decrease usage of existing similar facilities?

**Will other organisations provide resources and assistance through partnership arrangements? Will a combination of resourcing result in meeting more than one set of needs, improved quality of provision or reduced costs?**

The application should indicate whether:

- Another group or organisation provides a similar facility.
- The proposed facility could be combined with existing facilities to achieve more efficiency and optimal usage;
- Other organisations can assist in the development of the proposed facility? If so how this will be achieved?
- Whether the proposed facility could be undertaken by joining the resources of two compatible groups?

**Does the proposed facility promote the region? Does it contribute to community identity?**

The application should indicate:

- What will be the position and image of the proposed facility? What messages does it create for the local community and/or national or international visitors?
- How will the proposed facility be marketed?
- Include a 3 year Marketing Plan for the facility

**How will we know if the proposed facility is working? What information will be gathered to measure the success of the facility? Will there be a regular review of the performance of the proposed facility against performance targets?**

The application should:

- Set measurable targets for the proposed facility's objectives.
- Describe the proposed facility's conditions for success;
- Allow for keeping a record of usage, inquiries and comments from users.
- Plan for simple surveys of users to find out what they think of the facility.
- Collect financial information about the facility and compare it against the targets set out in the feasibility study.
- Define other information that will be collected to monitor the facility's success.
- Describe how this information will be reported to the relevant funding agency and how frequently.
- Allow for regular evaluation and review of the proposed facility against its goals and objectives. (This is best done on an annual basis).
- Indicate the minimum targets that the proposed facility will achieve in order to continue to operate?
- Indicate how performance will be reported to the relevant funding agencies.

#### **5.5. Declaration**

The application will need to be signed by duly authorised officers of the applicant organisation (the legal entity), or organisations when a joint venture / partnership is involved.



### 8.3 PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028

Decision Required

<b>Report To:</b>	Saxton Field Committee
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	30 August 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Susan Edwards, Community Development Manager
<b>Report Number:</b>	SFC17-08-03

#### 1 Summary

- 1.1 This report provides the Committee with the opportunity to input into the proposed capital works programme for Saxton Field to be consulted on through both the Nelson City Council and Tasman District Council Long Term Plan 2018-2028 processes and requests that the Committee recommends the programme, with any amendments, to the parent Councils.
- 1.2 Both the Tasman District and Nelson City Councils are currently underway with preparing the budgets and activity/asset management plans which will feed into the Long Term Plans for the 10 year period from 2018-2028. Staff from both Councils have been working together to prepare a proposed list of capital works projects for inclusion in the draft budgets for the Councils Long Term Plans, for the Committee's consideration.
- 1.3 Attachment 1 to this report outlines the list of projects staff have considered and prioritised. Some projects are recommended for funding over the next 10 years and others are not. We are seeking the Committee's input into the list of proposed projects to go into the draft budgets for the Long Term Plans. These projects may be amended by the Councils prior to the budgets being finalised. The Committee can choose to accept the projects as proposed, to amend them or to ask staff to report back with an alternative list for consideration.

#### 2 Draft Resolution

**That the Saxton Field Committee**

1. **receives the Proposed Saxton Field Capital Works Programme for Consultation Through Long Term Plans 2018-2028 report; and**
2. **recommends to the Tasman District Council and Nelson City Council that they adopt the capital works programme for Saxton Field contained in Attachment 1 to Report SFC17-08-03 for incorporation into their draft budgets as part of their Long Term Plan 2018-2028 processes, with the following amendments:**
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_; and
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_; and
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_.

Page 1



**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH  
LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

**3 Purpose of the Report**

3.1 The purposes of this report are to:

- 3.1.1 provide the Committee with the opportunity to input into the proposed capital works programme for Saxton Field to be consulted on through both the Nelson City Council and Tasman District Council Long Term Plan 2018-2028 processes; and
- 3.1.2 request that the Committee recommends the capital works programme agreed at the meeting to the two Councils for incorporation into their draft budgets as part of their Long Term Plan 2018-2028 processes.

**4 Background and Discussion**

- 4.1 Both the Tasman District and Nelson City Councils are currently underway with preparing the budgets and activity/asset management plans which will feed into the Long Term Plans for the 10 year period from 2018-2028. Both Councils will be consulting on their Long Term Plans 2018-2028 in March/April 2018, with adoption of the final plans by 30 June 2018.
- 4.2 Staff from both Councils have been working together to prepare a draft list of capital works projects for consideration by the Committee and then inclusion in draft budgets for the two Councils Long Term Plans. Staff have also considered what existing infrastructure at the complex will need to be renewed during the next 10 years. The timing of the projects allows for staff to spread the workload over time.
- 4.3 Attachment 1 to this report outlines the list of projects staff have considered and prioritised. Some projects are recommended for funding over the next 10 years and others are not.
- 4.4 Staff have used the 50/50 funding split, proposed in a separate report on this agenda, as the basis for funding the proposed projects in the upcoming Long Term Plans.
- 4.5 During the preparation of the Long Term Plan 2015-2025, Tasman District Council restricted its expenditure at Saxton Field to the amount it paid off its loans relating to the complex over the 10 year period (approximately \$3.2 million). The Council has made the same request of staff for the coming Long Term Plan process. On this basis, the maximum expenditure at Saxton Field over the 10 years would be \$6.4 million (based on the 50/50 funding split arrangement). Staff have kept the proposed capital works expenditure to within that figure.
- 4.6 Staff from each Council independently prioritised the list of potential projects. There was generally common agreement on the priorities between the staff of both Councils, with the exception of two projects (the Champion Green facility and the Saxton Oval spectator bank modifications), which Tasman staff rated as lower priorities than Nelson staff.
- 4.7 We are seeking the Committee's input into the list of projects, in particular:
  - 4.7.1 do you agree with potential projects on the list?
  - 4.7.2 are there other projects which should be considered?





**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

- 4.7.3 what, if any, changes would you like to the proposed order of priority of the projects?
- 4.7.4 is the spread of the project budgets acceptable to go forward to the parent Councils?
- 4.8 A range of staff will be available at the meeting to explain the proposed projects and why we have prioritised them the way we have, to help inform the Committee’s discussion.
- 4.9 For the Committee’s information, Nelson City Council is currently in the process of engaging with sporting codes to identify and assess their requests for new facilities against a set of criteria. The results of this consultation may have bearing on the final list of capital works projects that the Councils may wish to include in their Long Term Plan consultation documents. The outcomes of this work are not likely to be known until November. In the meantime, we needed to prepare something to go into the Long Term Plan draft budgets for consideration by the Councils.
- 4.10 Essentially, we are seeking some feedback on the funding envelop and likely projects for Saxton Field, noting that the detail of exactly which projects will happen and when, may be subject to further changes following the engagement currently underway.

**5 Options**

- 5.1 The Committee has the options of:
  - 5.1.1 agreeing to the list of proposed projects in Attachment 1 to go forward into the two Councils upcoming Long Term Plans; or
  - 5.1.2 amending the list of proposed projects in Attachment 1 to go forward into the two Councils upcoming Long Term Plans; or
  - 5.1.3 asking staff to review the list of proposed projects for reconsideration at a subsequent meeting.
- 5.2 An analysis of the options is contained in the following table.

Option	Analysis
1. Agree to the list of proposed projects in Attachment 1 to go forward into the two Councils upcoming Long Term Plan processes	This option would be appropriate if the Committee considers that staff have identified the correct list of possible projects for inclusion in the upcoming Long Term Plans and if the list is prioritised appropriately. The list would then be recommended through to the two parent Councils for consideration prior to incorporation in the draft budgets for the Long Term Plan and in the relevant activity/asset management plans.  This option has the advantage of enabling input into the Long Term Plan draft budgets in a timely manner.  This option would not be appropriate if the Committee considers that changes are needed to the list of projects and the priorities accorded to the projects.



Saxton Field Committee - 30 August 2017

**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

<p>2. Amend the list of proposed projects in Attachment 1 to go forward into the two Councils upcoming Long Term Plans</p>	<p>This option is a variation of the option above. It would be appropriate if the Committee considers that staff have generally identified the correct list of possible projects for inclusion in the upcoming Long Term Plans and if the list is largely prioritised appropriately. The Committee could make any amendments it considers are needed during the meeting. Staff would then amend the list, which would subsequently be recommended through to the two parent Councils for consideration prior to incorporation in the draft budgets for the Long Term Plan and in the relevant activity/asset management plans.</p> <p>This option has the advantage of enabling input into the Long Term Plan draft budgets in a timely manner. It also enables Committee members to amend the list of projects, as needed.</p> <p>This option would not be appropriate if the Committee considers that major changes are needed to the list of projects and the priorities accorded to the projects.</p>
<p>3. Ask staff to review the list of proposed projects for reconsideration at a subsequent meeting</p>	<p>This option would be appropriate if the Committee considers that staff have not generally identified the correct list of possible projects for inclusion in the upcoming Long Term Plans and if the list is not largely prioritised appropriately.</p> <p>If the Committee adopts this option, staff would like an indication of the major changes the Committee seeks to enable us to prepare a report for a subsequent meeting.</p> <p>This option has the advantage of enabling more time for the Committee to consider the range of possible projects for inclusion in the draft budgets for the Long Term Plans. This option has the disadvantage of delaying the budgets going into both Councils Long Term Plan processes, which are now well underway. A new meeting would need to be scheduled prior to the October meeting to reduce the delay.</p>

**6 Strategy and Risks**

6.1 The proposals contained in this report align with the both Councils community outcomes, particularly:

6.1.1 Our communities have access to a range of social, educational and recreational facilities and activities;

6.1.2 Our infrastructure is efficient, cost effective and meets current and future needs;

Page 4



**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

- 6.1.3 Our Council provides leadership and fosters partnerships, a regional perspective, and community engagement; and
- 6.1.4 Our communities are healthy, safe, inclusive and resilient.
- 6.2 The key risks include:
  - 6.2.1 that staff have not identified the most important projects for the community – this risk has been mitigated through a range of staff being involved in the process of identifying and prioritising the projects and through the Committee's input. The Long Term Plan public consultation process will also help to identify any projects that may be missing;
  - 6.2.2 that renewal of existing infrastructure is needed either before or after it is budgeted for – this risk can be mitigated by the opportunity to move projects through Annual Plan processes. Also, the Long Term Plan will be reviewed again in three years and the condition of existing assets will be re-assessed at that time;
  - 6.2.3 that the budgets identified for the projects are insufficient to complete the work required – the budgets for the projects in the first three years are fairly robust and the projects after these years will be reviewed again through the Long Term Plan 2021-2031 process; and
  - 6.2.4 that the two Councils will not agree on the capital works programme – the joint committee process will help mitigate this risk.

**7 Policy / Legal Requirements / Plan**

- 7.1 The capital works programme agreed to by both Councils will feed into the draft budgets for the two Councils Long Term Plans and into the appropriate activity/asset management plans.
- 7.2 The programme is consistent with the intent of the Saxton Field Reserve Management Plan.

**8 Consideration of Financial or Budgetary Implications**

- 8.1 As noted earlier in the report, Tasman District Council has previously set a cap on spending at Saxton Field of approximately \$3.2 million over the 10 years of the Long Term Plan. Staff have prepared the programme of work to be delivered within this cap.
- 8.2 The financial impact of the capital works programme will be identified through the two Councils Long Term Plan processes. At that time, the Saxton Field proposed projects will need to be considered alongside the other priorities of both Councils for their Long Term Plans and to ensure their financial limits are complied with. There may need to be some adjustments to the work programme once both Councils have seen the combined impact of all the projects in their draft budgets for their Long Term Plans.
- 8.3 A second opportunity for amendments to the work programme will be in response to submissions through the Long Term Plans processes and before the Plans are finalised in June 2018.



Saxton Field Committee - 30 August 2017

**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

**9 Significance and Engagement**

- 9.1 Staff consider that the overall level of significance of the decisions being sought in this report, is moderate. The purpose of the decision is to enable the proposed projects to go into the two Councils draft budgets for the Long Term Plans and ultimately future public consultation and engagement. Consultation is, therefore, not required prior to making this decision.
- 9.2 However, as stated earlier in this report, the Committee needs to be aware that Nelson City Council is currently engaging with sporting codes to identify and assess their requests for new facilities against a set of criteria. The results of this consultation may have bearing on the final list of capital works projects that the Councils may wish to include in their Long Term Plan consultation documents. The outcomes of this work are not likely to be known until November. In the meantime, these projects are proposed to be incorporated into the draft budgets for the Long Term Plans.

Issue	Level of Significance	Explanation of Assessment
Is there a high level of public interest, or is decision likely to be controversial?	Moderate	The Saxton Field complex is well used by residents of both Nelson City and Tasman District. The proposed capital works programme is likely to be of moderate public interest. Some groups and individuals are likely to want the projects relating to their areas of interest given a higher priority and funded earlier in the work programme.
Is there a significant impact arising from duration of the effects from the decision?	Moderate	Any decisions made today can be amended by the parent Councils either prior to or following public consultation on the Long Term Plans. The Long Term Plans are reviewed in three years time.
Does the decision relate to a strategic asset? (refer Significance and Engagement Policy for list of strategic assets)	No	Saxton Field is not identified as a strategic asset in either Councils Significance and Engagement Policy.
Does the decision create a substantial change in the level of service provided by Council?	Low	Some of the new projects will improve the levels of service at Saxton Field, but they will not have a major impact on levels of service across either Nelson City or Tasman District.

Page 6



**PROPOSED SAXTON FIELD CAPITAL WORKS PROGRAMME FOR CONSULTATION THROUGH LONG TERM PLANS 2018-2028**

Does the proposal or decision substantially affect debt, rates or Council finances in any one year or more of the LTP?	Low to Moderate	The proposals have a low to moderate impact on both Councils finances.
Does the decision involve the sale of a substantial proportion or controlling interest in a CCO or CCTO?	No	
Does the proposal or decision involve entry into a private sector partnership or contract to carry out the deliver on any Council group of activities?	No	Some of the projects will require partnerships with and funding contributions from community groups. However, these only relate to a project, not a group of activities.
Does the decision involve Council exiting from or entering into a group of activities?	No	

**10 Conclusion**

- 10.1 Staff have worked collaboratively to prepare a proposed list of capital works projects at Saxton Field for each Council to consult on through their respective Long Term Plans 2018-2028. The Committee has the opportunity to add to, delete or amend the proposed list of projects identified and prioritised by staff. Staff recommend that the Committee discusses the list of proposed projects and makes any amendments it wishes.

**11 Next Steps / Timeline**

- 11.1 Once the Committee has agreed to a list of proposed projects, the list will be considered by each of the parent Councils for inclusion in their respective activity/asset management plans and Long Term Plan draft budgets.
- 11.2 The projects may be need to be varied once the financial impact of the draft budgets for the Long Term Plans is known and once the outputs of Nelson City Council's current engagement with sporting codes is known.
- 11.3 The Long Term Plan Consultation Documents will go out for public consultation in March/April 2018 and the final Long Term Plans will be adopted by each Council in June 2018.

**12 Attachments**

1. List of Proposed Capital Works Projects



Sheet1

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	Project	Priority	1 (18/19)	2 (19/20)	3 (20/21)	4 (21/22)	5 (22/23)	6 (23/24)	7 (24/25)	8 (25/26)	9 (26/27)	10 (27/28)	10 yr totals
2	Champion Drive (link)	1		\$96,700	\$967,000								\$1,063,700
3	Velodrome landscaping	1		\$5,000									\$5,000
4	Velodrome lighting	1	\$120,000										\$120,000
5	Renewal: Hockey Turf No 1 re surface	1	\$550k (carry fwd)										\$0
6	Mountain Bike track Dvlpt	1	\$30,000										\$30,000
7	Cycle/path development as per plan	1	\$20,000	\$200,000	\$20,000								\$240,000
8	Champion Green facility (pavilion/storage/toilet)	2			\$50,000	\$880,000							\$930,000
9	Oval embankment steps/accessibility stand	2	\$20,000										\$20,000
10	Complete tree planting (Alliance and Champion)	2		\$30,000									\$30,000
11	Renewal: Oval wicket block	2					\$100,000						\$100,000
12	Renewal: Oval cricket surface	2					\$300,000						\$300,000
13	Regional playground with skate facility OR several smaller satellite playgrounds	2	\$25,000	\$125,000	\$125,000								\$275,000
14	Alliance Green irrigation and subsurface drainage	3			\$20,000	\$200,000							\$220,000
15	Bmx track development (with pavilion) and asphalt track	3			\$35,000	\$350,000							\$385,000
16	Renewal: Athletics Track re surface	3					\$900,000						\$900,000
17	Fitness trail	4					\$20,000						\$20,000
18	Alliance Green car park and paths	5									\$60,000		\$60,000
19	Harrier/cross country running tracks with trestles etc	5									\$20,000		\$20,000
20	Path from Indoor Nets to Football pavilion with bridge/culverts on 2 swales	5									\$20,000		\$20,000
21	Alliance Green cricket wicket blocks x2	5					\$5,000	\$40,000					\$45,000
22	Alliance Green toilets and Pavilion	5							\$40,000	\$400,000			\$440,000
23	Flood lighting for concert safety	5									\$20,000	\$200,000	\$220,000
24	Renewal: Hockey Turf No 2 re surface	5										\$50,000	\$50,000
25	Saxton Creek Culvert upsizing	Future											\$0
26	Main Road Stoke Cycleway near velodrome (planning underway)	Future											\$0
27	Saxton Oval spectator bank modifications (retaining and seating for perimeter, reshaping bank)	Future											\$0
28	Oval gladiator seat extensions either side of Pavilion	Future											\$0
29	Cycle link to Hill Street	Future											\$0
30	Parking for North Champion Green	Future											\$0
31	Softball flood lighting	Future											\$0
32	Champion Green Baseball dvlpt	Future											\$0
33	Power supply to concert area	Future											\$0
34	Stonewalls and Saxton Field signs at Main Road Stoke Entrance	Future											\$0
35	Stonewalls and Saxton Field signs at Saxton Road Entrance	Future											\$0
36	Inline skate track/ criterion racing	Future											\$0
37	Contractors compound (Alliance Green)	Future											\$0
38	Saxton pond recreation development incl. beach/pontoon	Future											\$0
39	Toilets and picnic facilities	Future											\$0
40	Install various artworks	Future											\$0
41	Oval night lighting	Future											\$0
42	Football artificial pitch with lights	Future											\$0
43	Extend and seal car park on Circus Green	Future											\$0
44	Bleacher seating various locations. Bleachers from Men's shed Richmond	Future											\$0
45	Event screen. Computerised, at road entrance	Future											\$0
46	General	Ongoing	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$90,000	\$900,000
47			\$305,000	\$546,700	\$1,307,000	\$1,520,000	\$1,415,000	\$130,000	\$130,000	\$490,000	\$110,000	\$440,000	\$6,393,700
48													
49												TDC 50%	3,196,850
50												NCC 50%	3,196,850





**8.6 UPLIFT OF DEFERRED ZONE - HARI AND TOPI WAY, MAPUA****Decision Required**

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Maxine Day, Senior Policy Advisor
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-21

**Executive Summary**

- 1.1 In accordance with Rule 17.14.2 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan (TRMP), staff recommend the removal of the 'Rural 1 deferred Residential zone' status for the following sites in Mapua between Iwa Street and Aranui Road:
 

Lot 1 DP17890;  
Lot 1 307114; and  
Lots 1, 77-91, 101 & 102 DP 504876
- 1.2 The Engineering Services Manager supports the removal of the deferred zone and has confirmed by letter dated 15 August 2017 that 'appropriate services have been provided to these sites' (Engineering Plan 6937/5 As Built).
- 1.3 The sites were deferred for residential development as part of the Proposed TRMP in 1996, with s.17.12.2 noting 'Mapua' was deferred for stormwater. Subsequent changes to the TRMP Deferred zone schedule (17.14A) did not include this location or the reasons for deferral. This omission is to be corrected by way of a CI20A correction. Engineering Services advise that the sites have also been constrained for water supply and wastewater, but these services are now in place.
- 1.4 Further, as part of Plan Change 22 in 2015, the Area Maps (54 and 87) were amended to show some of the sites would be zoned 'Recreation'. The 'indicative Areas' on the planning maps no longer match the location of the titles issued to Tasman District Council for recreation purposes. These titles include Lots 92, 93, 94, 95 and 96 DP 504876. Given the variance in location of the 'indicative Recreation zone' and the actual titles proposed for Recreation zoning, a consequential plan change will be required to uplift the deferred zone on these sites and rezone them Recreation. It is proposed these zone corrections are made through the next available plan change.
- 1.5 The remaining lots are to be zoned Residential.
- 1.6 Following approval of the recommended resolution contained in this report, the TRMP Schedule 17.14A and corresponding TRMP Zone and Area maps 19, 54 and 87 will be

updated to reflect the removal of the deferred zone status. The change takes effect from the date Council makes its resolution.

1.7 The landowners have been advised by letter of the change.

**Draft Resolution**

**That the Tasman District Council**

- 1 Receives the report ‘Uplift of Deferred Zone – Hari and Topi Way’ RCN17-09-21; and**
- 2 approves the removal of the Rural 1 deferred Residential zone status over the follow land at Mapua:**
  - Lot 1 DP17890;
  - Lot 1 307114;
  - Lots 1, 77-91, 101 &102 DP 504876

**and its rezoning in accordance with the following update to Schedule 17.14A, including consequential changes to the planning maps, pursuant to Rule 17.14.2 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan, effective over that land from the date of this resolution.**

**Schedule 17.14A: Deferred Zone Locations**

Location of Area	Effective Zone until Removal of Deferral	Reason for Deferral	Date of Resolution for Removal of Deferral	Where Services Proposed by Developer, Legal Description of any Part of Area where Deferral Removed	Where Services Proposed by Developer, References to Detailed Performance Requirements and Engineering Plans of Services Approved by Council	Effective Zone after Removal of Deferral
Mapua between Iwa Street and Aranui Road Lot 1 DP17890; Lot 1 307114; and Lots 1, 77-91, 101 &102 DP 504876;	Rural 1	Stormwater	28/9/17		Plan 6937/5	Residential

**Attachments**

TRMP Planning Map – Topi and Hari Way

**8.7 UPLIFT OF DEFERMENT AT 551 LOWER QUEEN STREET**

Decision Required

<b>Report To:</b>	Full Council
<b>Meeting Date:</b>	28 September 2017
<b>Report Author:</b>	Maxine Day, Senior Policy Advisor
<b>Report Number:</b>	RCN17-09-22

**Executive Summary**

- 1.1 In accordance with Rule 17.14.2 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan (TRMP), staff recommend the removal of the deferred zone status for the following site in the Richmond West Development Area (G) is recommended:
  - 551 Lower Queen Street, Richmond (Lot 3 DP 7236)
- 1.2 The site was deferred for reticulated water, wastewater and stormwater services (see excerpt of Schedule 17.14A below).
- 1.3 The Engineering Services Manager supports the removal of the deferred zone and has confirmed by letter dated 12 July 2017 that 'appropriate services can be provided to this site' (Engineering Plan 6960).
- 1.4 Following approval of the recommended resolution contained in this report, TRMP Schedule 17.14A and corresponding TRMP maps 23, 57,121 and 123 will be updated to reflect the removal of the deferred zone status. The change takes effect from the date Council makes its resolution.
- 1.5 The landowner has been advised by letter of the change.

**Draft Resolution****That the Tasman District Council**

1. receives the report 'Uplift of Deferral at 551 Lower Queen Street' RCN17-09-22; and
2. approves the removal of the deferred Light Industrial zone status over the lands at 551 Lower Queen Street, Richmond, as shown in Attachment 1 of RCN17-09-05, and its rezoning from Rural 1 to Light Industrial Zone pursuant to Rule 17.14.2 of the Tasman Resource Management Plan, effective over that land from the date of this resolution.

Operative

Section 17.14 – Deferred Zone Rules

29 July 2017

Schedule 17.14A: Deferred Zone Locations

Location of Area	Effective Zone until Removal of Deferral	Reason for Deferral	Date of Resolution for Removal of Deferral	Where Services Proposed by Developer, Legal Description of any Part of Area where Deferral Removed	Where Services Proposed by Developer, References to Detailed Performance Requirements and Engineering Plans or Services Approved by Council	Effective Zone after Removal of Deferral	CS1 1/15 Op 9/16
Richmond West Development Area: Areas notated F, G, H and I on the planning maps	Rural 1	Area F: Stormwater service required Area G: Reticulated water, wastewater and stormwater services required Area H: Reticulated water, wastewater and stormwater (Borck Creek construction) services required Area I: Reticulated water, wastewater and stormwater services required and in respect of Area I, there is substantial take-up of Area H				Light Industrial	